

Index

- Abāqā b. Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Qājār 223
- Abaqa b. Hülegü, Ilkhanid ruler (r. 663–680/1265–1282) 71
- ‘Abbās b. Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 116
- ‘Abbās Bēg b. Malik Maḥmūd II Kayānī 285
- ‘Abbās I b. Muḥammad Khudābanda, Safavid ruler (r. 996–1038/1588–1629) 5, 11, 34, 47, 49–51, 53–56, 59–60, 62–63, 72–73, 79, 84, 94, 115, 206–207, 252–253, 259, 268–269, 284
- ‘Abbās II b. Ṣafī, Safavid ruler (r. 1052–1077/1642–1666) 39, 47, 49, 54, 62, 64, 67–68, 74, 76, 80
- ‘Abbās Khān Qājār, governor of Astarābād (1830s) 255
- ‘Abbās Khān Raiḥān, Kāmran Sadūzai’s Qizilbāsh attendant 161
- ‘Abbās Mīrzā Nā’ib al-Salṭana b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār (1203–1249/1789–1833), governor of Mashhad (1831–1833) 144, 147, 151, 196, 200, 206, 210, 215, 222, **224–225**, 226, 231, 232, 241, 255, 263, 265, 273
- ‘Abbās Qulī, see Rizā Qulī ‘Abbās Qulī b. Bēgler Khān Chāpushlū (d. 1853)
- ‘Abbās Qulī b. Ḥasan Khān Shāmlū, governor of Herat (appointed in spring 1050/1641) 59
- ‘Abbās Qulī Khān (Qarā) Bayāt 110, 298
- ‘Abbās Qulī Khān Pisyān 162
- ‘Abbās Qulī Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (until 1124/1712–1713) 87
- ‘Abbās Qulī Mīr Panja Kurd Jahānbēglū (d. 1269/1852–53) 231
- ‘Abd al-‘Alī Bēg, first Safavid governor of Marv, Abīvard and Khabūshān (1510–1512) 55, 268
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīm al-Ḥasanī (9th century), Shiite ascetic 199
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Ḥayāt Sadūzai 82
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Iskandar Hazāra 173–174
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Nadhr Muḥammad, Tuqai-Timurid Khan (r. 1055–1092/1645–1681) 50
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīz Khān Hūtak (d. 1717) 88
- ‘Abd al-Ghaffār, *mustaufī* of Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 128
- ‘Abd al-Ghafūr b. Ibrāhīm Tāymanī (d. 1879) 181, 192
- ‘Abd al-Ghanī Khān Alakūzai 88–89, 92–93, 106, 108, 144
- ‘Abd al-Ḥaqq Pushtakī, Mullā 160
- ‘Abd al-Laṭīf Khān, Vakīl 128
- ‘Abd al-Mu’min b. ‘Abdullāh, Abu al-Khairid ruler (r. 1006/1598) 10–11, 49, 54, 68, 268
- ‘Abd al-Quddūs b. Sulṭān Muḥammad Muḥammadzai, governor of Herat (1881–1882) 174, 193
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Jāmī, Nūr al-Dīn (d. 898/1492) 18, 40, 42
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Khalīfā, Naqshbandī *shaikh* of Marv (d. 1854) 160, 273–274
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Khān b. Afzal, Muḥammadzai ruler (1880–1901) 145–146, 149–150, 158, 167–168, 172, 178–179, 181, 193, 201–202, 291, 301
- ‘Abd al-Shakūr Khān Fūfalzai, *dīvānbēgī* of Herat 128
- ‘Abd al-Vahhāb Khān Shīrāzī Āṣaf al-Daula, governor of Mashhad (1884–1886) 133, 236
- ‘Abd al-Vahhāb Mu’tamad al-Daula, Mīrzā (1759–1829) 215, 222
- Abdālī Pashtūn(s) 12, 47–48, 74–82, 84–89, 91–94, 97–99, 101, 104–107, 136–137, 140, 148, 153–154, 176, 180, 199, 207, 284
- ‘Abdullāh Anṣārī, Khvāja (d. 1089) 27–28, 31, 42, 185
- ‘Abdullāh b. ‘Abd al-Jabbār Bēg Jamshīdī 167
- ‘Abdullāh b. Ḥayāt Sulṭān Sadūzai 82, 87–89
- ‘Abdullāh b. Iskandar, Abu al-Khairid ruler (r. 991–1006/1583–1598) 10, 49, 54, 68, 268
- ‘Abdullāh Jān b. Shīr ‘Alī Khān Muḥammadzai (1861–1878) 145
- ‘Abdullāh Khān Tīmūrī 177
- ‘Abdullāh Khū’ī, Ḥājji Mīrzā, *mutavallībāshī* of Imām Rizā’s shrine (1262–1264/1846–1848) 228–229
- ‘Ābid b. Allāhdād Sadūzai 82
- Abīvard 51–52, 64, 86, 91–92, 95, 141, 195, 206–207, 243, 259, 268–269
- Abū Aḥmad, Chishtī saint (d. 355/966) 31, 81
- Abū al-Faiḥ Khān b. Subḥānqulī, Tuqai-Timurid ruler of Bukhārā (1123–1160/1711–1747) 98, 102, 114, 196
- Abū al-Faṭḥ II b. Abū Ṭālib Barnābādī (d. 1740) 135–137
- Abū al-Faṭḥ Mu’ayyid al-Daula b. Sulṭān Murād Mīrzā Ḥusām al-Salṭana (d. 1330/1911–12), governor of Mashhad (1893–1894/95) 237
- Abū al-Khair, grandfather of Muḥammad Shībānī, founder of Abu al-Khairid dynasty (r. 1428–1468) 45, 196
- Abū al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad Qarā’ī 216, 236
- Abū al-Qāsim b. Ṣūfī Islām 158–159
- Abū al-Qāsim Farāhānī Qā’im Maqām, Mīrzā, *ṣadr-i a’ẓam* (1834–1835) 225, 291
- Abū al-Sa’īd b. Abī al-Khair (d. 1049) 40, 42
- Abū Sa’īd b. Sulṭān Muḥammad, Timurid ruler (r. 855–873/1451–1469) 10, 17, 27, 31
- Abū Ṭālib Māyil b. Abū Faṭḥ I Barnābādī (1051–1130/1641–1718) 135–137
- Abvāb al-Mulk, see Kayūmarth Mīrzā Īlkhānī Mulk Ārā Abvāb al-Mulk
- Achakzai Durrānī(s) 163, 179
- ‘Ādil Shāh, see ‘Alī Qulī Khān Afshār ‘Ādil Shāh b. Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (r. 1747–1748)

- Adraskan river 30, 36, 64, 189
- Afghān, Afāghina 69, 70, 74–77, 79–80, 82, 84–87, 89, 92–94, 98, 101–105, 110, 112–116, 121–122, 128–129, 132, 137, 140, 153–157, 159, 163–166, 168, 176, 180, 189, 195–200, 233, 241, 270, 282, 284, 297–300
- Afghānistān 3, 70, 75, 77, 104–105, 110, 147–149, 158, 167–168, 189, 195–201, 241, 289–290, 297, 299–300
- Afghānistān-i Hind 297
- Afghānistān-i Tarakī va ‘Alīkhēl 297
- Afrāsiyāb Bēg Khān (d. 1751), Mughal *nā’ib* of Kashmīr 112
- Afrāsiyāb, Turanian king 39, 240
- Afshār Turkmen(s) 11, 51, 55–56, 86–87, 90–92, 99, 101–103, 109–110, 117, 121–126, 129, 148, 164, 195, 200–201, 206–208, 217, 230, 253, 270, 285
- Afzal al-Dīn Muḥammad Kirmānī, Khvāja (d. 910/1504–5), *vazīr* under Sulṭān Ḥusain Bāyqarā 20
- Āghzīvār Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1533–1535) 53, 57
- Agra 10, 45, 76–77, 111
- ahl-i ikhtiṣāṣ* 55
- ahl-i qalam* 69
- ahl-i saif* 69
- Aḥmad ‘Alī Mīrzā b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār, governor of Mashhad (1830–1831) 222, **223**, 263
- Aḥmad Khān Ishāqzai Durrānī, governor of Lāsh-Juvain (1858–1867) 287–288
- Aḥmad Khān Nūrzai 127, 129
- Aḥmad Mīrzā Mu‘īn al-Daula b. ‘Abbās Mīrzā Nā’ib al-Saltāna (b. ca. 1234/1818–19) 257
- Aḥmad Qulī b. Iskandar Hazāra 173–175
- Aḥmad Sanjar b. Malik Shāh (r. 511–552/1118–1157) 9, 28, 35, 43
- Aḥmad Shāh b. Zamān, Sadūzai ruler (r. 1160–1186/1747–1772) 5, 12, 59, 69, 82–83, 92–93, 101–121, 125–126, 128–129, 137, 139–141, 154, 156, 171, 180, 187, 200, 213–214, 254, 285–286, 297–298
- Aḥmad-i Jām Zhanda Pīl (d. 536/1141) 30, 38–40, 42–43, 128
- Aḥmadshāhī, see also Qandahār 108
- ‘Ain al-Mulk Khvānsālār, governor of Māzandarān and Astarābād (appointed in 1863) 257
- ‘Ā’isha bt. Mīr Afzal Muḥammadzai, wife of Amīr Shīr ‘Alī Khān Muḥammadzai 145
- ‘*ajam* 83, 181, 297–298
- Akbar b. Humāyūn, Mughal emperor (r. 963–1014/1556–1605) 49, 74, 79
- akbar*; *akābir* 32, 40, 267
- Akhal (Ākhāl, Akhāl) 207, 212, 228, 231–232, 235, 242–243, 245–249, 257, **259–262**, 264, 276, 280–281
- Akhlamad (Akhluṃad) 211
- ‘Alā al-Dīn Tekish, Khvarazmian ruler (r. 567–596/1172–1200) 19
- Āla Dāgh 92
- Alakūzai Durrānī(s) 79, 88–89, 92–93, 106–108, 113–114, 143–144, 162–163, 169–170, 177–178, 190–191, 224, 233
- ‘Ālamgīr II b. Jahāndār Shāh, Mughal ruler (r. 1167–1173/1754–1759) 12, 101, 112–113
- Alanjān 23, 25, 190
- Alasha canal, see also Sukhtiyap 275
- Alburz 3, 170, 207, 209, 243, 247, 249, 252
- ‘Alī Akbar b. Muḥammad Hāshim Barnābādī (987–1084/1579–1673) 134–135
- ‘Alī Akbar ‘Imād al-Mulk b. Ḥājī Muḥammad Bāqir Zangū’ī 214
- ‘Alī Aṣghar Khān Amīn al-Sulṭān b. Āqā Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (1274–1325/1858–1907), *ṣadr-i a’zam* (1893–1896, 1898–1903) 237
- ‘Alī b. Ḥasan Bākharzī, Saljūq *vazīr* (d. 467/1075) 37
- ‘Alī b. Khān Jahān Sanjarānī Balūch, governor of Chakhānsūr (1810–?) 286
- ‘Alī b. Mūsā al-Rizā (Abū al-Ḥasan al-Thānī, Sulṭān-i Khurāsān), eighth Imām (d. 203/818) 11, 42, 53, 68, 84–85, 94, 102, 109–110, 121, 123–127, 154, 159, 181, 208, 217, 225, 228–230, 235–237, 284
- ‘Alī Khān Khūgiyānī, governor of Multān 111
- ‘Alī Khān Sarbandī (d. ca. 1859) 287–288
- ‘Alī Mardān Khān b. Ganj ‘Alī, Safavid governor of Qandahār until 1638 49, 79, 297
- ‘Alī Mardān Khān Tīmūrī Nuṣrat al-Mulk 133, 236
- ‘Alī Mardān Khān Zangū’ī (d. 1770) 118, 214
- ‘Alī Naqī Khān Qājār, *bēglerbēgī* of Marv 125, 271
- ‘Alī Naqī Mīrzā Ḥujjat al-Sulṭān b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār 222
- ‘Alī Qulī Khān (d. 1722–23), *bēglerbēgī* of Mashhad 284
- ‘Alī Qulī Khān Afshār ‘Ādil Shāh b. Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (r. 1747–1748) 90–91, 99, 103, 109, 123, 137, 254, 285
- ‘Alī Qulī Khān Shāmlū, governor of Herat under Muḥammad Khudābanda 72
- ‘Alī Rizā Khān Shīrvānī (d. 1183/1769–70), leader of the Qizilbāsh of Qandahār 297
- ‘Alī Shīr Navā’ī, Timurid minister (844–906/1441–1501) 17, 20, 27–28, 53–54, 94
- Ali-eli Turkmen(s) 259–260, 262
- Alīkhēl Ghilzai(s) 297
- ‘*ālim*, ‘*ulamā*’ 47, 64, 107, 155, 158, 160, 162, 167–168, 217–218, 229–230, 239
- ‘Alīzai Durrānī(s) 92–93, 106, 129, 169
- Allāh Qulī b. Muḥammad Rahīm, Qunghrāt ruler of Khīva (r. 1240–1258/1825–1842) 160, 176, 246, 260, 273
- Allāh Qulī Mīrzā Īlkhānī 227
- Allāhvirdī b. Šūfī Islām 158

- Allāhvirdī Bēg Amīr-i Shikārbāshī, governor of Astarābād (1649–1652) 253
- Allāhyār b. ‘Abdullāh Sadūzai 87–90, 154
- Allāhyār Khān Āṣaf al-Daula b. Rukn al-Daula Muḥammad Bēglerbēgī Qājār Develū (d. 1850), *ṣadr-i a‘zam* (1824–1827), governor of Mashhad (1834–1847) 168, 170, 173, 210, 224, **225–230**, 231, 247, 249, 263–264
- almonds, see also *bādām* 31, 35, 37, 213
- Alp Arslān b. Chaghrī Bēg, Saljūq sultan (r. 455–465/1063–1072) 66
- Alplū Qizilbāsh 56
- Amarlū Kurd(s) 207
- Amīn al-Sulṭān, see ‘Alī Aṣghar Amīn al-Sulṭān (1858–1907)
- Amīnullāh b. Miḥdī Qulī Jamshīdī (d. 1886) 178
- amūr ākhūrbāshī*, master of the royal stables 55, 128
- amūr al-umarā*, commander-in-chief 20, 53, 55, 207, 211
- Amīr Aṣlān b. Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Sālār Qājār Develū (d. 1850) 230
- Amīr Ghiyāth Ḥalvāfurūsh (d. 1421) 32
- Amīr Gūna b. Muḥammad Ḥusain Za‘farānlū, Īlkhānī, Amīr al-Umarā, contemporary of Āqā Muḥammad Shāh and Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār 211, 261
- Amīr Ḥusain Īlkhānī Shujā‘ al-Daula b. Rizā Qulī Za‘farānlū (d. 1893) 212, 234–236, 257, 260
- Amīr Kabīr, see Mīrzā Taqī Khān Amīr Kabīr (1807–1852)
- Amīr Khān Javānshīr, governor of Kashmīr (1770–1772) 113
- Amīr Khān Mauṣillū, Safavid governor of Herat (1516–1521) 53, 57–58
- Amīr Khān Mīshmast 110, 119
- Amīr Khān Qarā‘ī, *sardār* of Khurāsān, governor of Tūn and Ṭabas under Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai 125, 214
- amūr*, *amīrān*, *umarā* 12, 38, 53, 59, 63, 94, 107, 128, 200–201, 213, 246, 283
- amrūd*, see also pears 35, 36
- Āmū Daryā (Āb-i Āmūya, Jaiḥūn, Oxus) 3, 6–12, 15, 18, 46, 48, 51–52, 62, 64–67, 83, 89–90, 99, 102, 109, 113–115, 128, 152, 194, 196, 201, 224, 244–246, 250–251, 268, 270, 272, 291, 293–294, 297–298, 301–302
- Āmul 65, 253
- anār*, see also pomegranates 35
- Anār Darra 116, 191–192
- Anau 243, 260
- Anbiyā b. Ibrāhīm Tāymanī (d. 1886) 177, 181
- Andkhūd 18, 71, 90–91, 114–115, 117, 123, 158, 160, 170, 195, 199, 249, 266
- anjūr*, see also figs 35
- Anūshīrvān Khān Qājār I‘tizād al-Daula (d. 1285/1868), governor of Astarābād (1284–1285/1867–1868) 257
- Anzala b. Darvīsh ‘Alī Hazāra (d. 1771) 120
- Anzala Khān Fūfālzai Durrānī, *sardār* of Herat 120, 180
- apples 31, 35–36
- apricots, see also *zardālū* 36, 245
- Āq Darband 243
- Āq Masjid (Fort Perovskii) 250
- Āq Qal‘a 257–258
- Āq Quyūnlū(s) 10–11, 50, 68, 98
- āq saqāl*, *āq saqālān* 114, 276
- Āqā b. Yalangtūsh II Jamshīdī 176
- Āqā Khān Nūrī I‘timād al-Daula, *ṣadr-i a‘zam* (1268–1275/1851–1858) 144, 165–166, 201, 232, 234, 245, 277
- Āqā Mīrzā b. Dilāvar Tāymanī 97, 180–181
- Āqā Muḥammad Shāh b. Muḥammad Ḥasan, Qājār ruler (d. 1211/1797) 130, 147, 195–197, 199–200, 208, 211, 214, 216–218, 240, 254–255, 272
- Āqā‘ī (Āqāsī) b. Muḥammad Shāh Hazāra 128
- Āqcha 114, 170
- ‘arab*, *a‘rāb* 5, 7, 73, 92, 102, 109, 121–122, 124–125, 195, 205–208, 210, 213–214, 248, 264, 266, 271, 282
- Aral sea 244–246, 250, 271
- ‘ar-‘ar*, cypress 39
- Ardabīl 254
- Areia (Herat) 6
- arg*, *ark* 21, 182–183, 287
- Arghandāb 70, 82, 94, 108, 177
- Arghastān river 79–80, 86, 93
- arghavān*, Judas-tree 39, 88, 97
- Arghūn b. Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Qājār 223
- ‘Arif b. Tarīn Abdāl 81
- Asadullāh b. ‘Abdullāh Sadūzai (d. 1132/1719–20) 86–88, 136
- Asadullāh b. Ja‘far, Kayanid governor of Sīstān (1712–1729) 284
- Asadullāh b. Mīr ‘Alam II Khuzaima 229
- Asadullāh, Sadū (1558–1627), progenitor of the Sadūzais 75, 79
- Āṣaf al-Daula, see ‘Abd al-Vahhāb Khān Shīrāzī Āṣaf al-Daula
- Āṣaf al-Daula, see Allāhyār Khān Āṣaf al-Daula
- Ashāqabāsh Qājār(s) 253
- Ashgabat, see ‘Ishqābād
- ‘ashīra*, *‘ashāyir* 208
- Ashraf 199, 254
- Ashraf al-Vuzārā, see Shāh Valī Khān Bāmīzai Ashraf al-Vuzārā (d. 1772)
- Ashraf b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz Hūtak Ghilzai (r. 1725–1729) 48, 86, 89
- ‘ashūrā* 165
- āsiyāvār* 36
- Astarābād 3, 5, 51–52, 56, 63, 72, 117, 136, 141, 150–152, 207–208, 212–213, 216, 224, 230–231, 243–245, 247–249, **252–259**, 260, 268, 280–281
- ‘Aṭā Muḥammad b. ‘Unāb Tāymanī 119

- ‘Aṭā Muḥammad Khān Alakūzai, *vazīr* of Herat 1818–1828/29 144
atābak 277
‘atabāt 124, 228
 Ātābāy Yomut(s) 256
atālīq 114–115
 ‘Aṭā’ullāh Khān Turkmān, *sipahsālār* of Turkistān (d. 1175/1761–62) 114
 ‘Aṭā’ullāh Khān, Sayyid, *dārūgha* of Turkistān 114
 Atek 90, 243, 245, 260, 269
 Atrak river 224, 244, 251–252, 256, 258, 301
 Auba 23–24, 31, 50, 81, 88, 117, 169, 180, 184, 190–191
 Aurangābād 111, 117
 Aurangzīb b. Shāh Jahān, Mughal emperor (r. 1068–1118/1658–1707) 78, 80, 82, 253
 Aurāq Khvāja, Bukharan governor of Marv 273–274
āvars, cypress 32
a’yan 114, 164
 Azāb 30, 36
 Āzād b. Muḥammad Bēglerbēgī Hazāra 220
 Āzād Khān Ghilzai, ruler of Tabrīz and Urmīya (1747–1757) 99, 103, 254
 Āzādvār 52
 Azerbaijan 11, 52, 63–64, 71, 84, 90, 99, 101, 122, 124, 197, 206–207, 215, 224, 254
- Bābā Khākī 33, 63
 Bābā Sangū, 14th-century saint of Andkhūd 18
bābā shaikhī melon 32, 40, 296
 Bābur, see Ṣahīr al-Dīn Muḥammad Bābur, founder of the Mughal dynasty (r. 1504–1530)
 Bactria (Balkh) 6
 Badakhshān 71, 75, 108, 115–116, 143, 192, 199, 268
 Badal Khān Afghān, military leader of Herat under Ḥājī Fīrūz al-Dīn Sadūzai 157
badal, *abdāl* 157
 Badallū 26
bādām, *bādāmā*, see also almonds 31
 Bādghīs, Bādghīsāt 7–8, 15, 17, 20, 23, 29–30, **32–33**, 35, 41–42, 51, 60, 62–63, 73, 81, 88, 91, 96, 98, 131, 137, 140, 158, 172–177, 180, 186, **188**, 194, 195, 221, 267
bādgīr 29, 94
 Badī’ al-Zamān b. Bahrām Mīrzā, Safavid governor of Sīstān 283
 Badī’ al-Zamān b. Muḥammad Qulī Mulk Ārā Qājār, governor of Astarābād (1820s–1834) 224, 255
 Badī’ al-Zamān b. Sulṭān Ḥusain Bāyqarā, Timurid ruler (r. 1506–1507) 66, 72
 Bād-i Ṣabā 87, 89
 Baghāyirī(s) 92, 210
- Baghdad 15, 71, 92, 152, 234
 Bāgh-i Jahānārā 21, 27
 Bāgh-i Safīd 23, 25
 Bāgh-i Shahr 21, 58
 Bāgh-i Zāghān 21, 25
bāghistān 16, 26
 Baghlān 115
 Bahādur b. Rizā Qulī ‘Abbās Qulī Chāpushlū 231, 274
 Bahādur Shāh I (Shāh ‘Ālam), Mughal ruler (r. 1707–1712) 85
 Bahāvalpūr 128
 Baḥrām b. Bunyād Hazāra (d. 1245/1829–30) 222
 Bahrām b. Maudūd Qulī Fīrūzkūhī 179
 Bahrām b. Sulaimān, Kayanid ruler of Sīstān (1794–?) 285–286
 Bahrām Khān Fīrūzkūhī, contemporary of Tīmūr Shāh and Shāh Zamān Sadūzai 119, 179
 Bairām ‘Alī b. Shāh Qulī Bēg Qājār ‘Izz al-Dīnlū (d. 1785), governor of Marv 271–273
 Bairām ‘Alī Khān b. Būdāq, Safavid governor of Mārūchāq (ca. 1602) 56
 Bairām Bēg Qarāmānlū, Safavid governor of Balkh (1510–1513) 55
 Bairām Ughlān, Uzbek governor of Gharjīstān 57, 72–73
bāj 57, 200
 Bājaur 75
 Bākharz 15, 17, 30, **37–38**, 40, 56–57, 64, 88–89, 96, 98, 117–118, 128, 132–133, 139–140, 170, 174–175, 195, 215, 218, 220, 222, 249, 297
 Bakhtiyārī(s) 92, 97, 207
 Bakvā 87, 164–165, 191
 Bālā Ḥīṣār 146
 Bālā Murghāb (Marv al-Rūd) 7, 30, 32–33, 50–51, 73, 169, 174, 176–178, 221, 226
balad, *bilād*, *buldān* 51, 67, 90, 94, 107, 196, 241, 298
balda, *bilād*, *buldān* 2, 24, 58, 153, 157
 Balkh (Balkh-i Bāmī) 3, 6–7, 11, 16, 30, 35, 37, 45, 48–50, 55–57, 60, 63, 65, 67, 71, 73, 75, 77, 90–91, 96, 99, 114–115, 117, 123, 152, 195–200, 241, 268, 272, 298, 300–301
 Balkhān mountains 243–244, 252, 255
 Balūch 70, 72–74, 82, 89, 92, 282–284, 286–289, 292
 Balūchistān 3, 91, 105, 112, 116, 128–129, 149, 152, 199, 239, 291
 Bām 63, 224
 Bāmiyān 116, 143, 192, 199, 282
 Bāmīzai Durrānī(s) 112, 115, 127, 140
banafsh tree 36
 Band-i Bāba/Kūh-i Bāba 29, 30, 180, 188
 Band-i Bayān 29
 Band-i Jān ‘Alī 273
 Band-i Nādir 188

- Band-i Qāziqlī 275
 Band-i Sistān (Band-i Kuhak) 290
 Band-i Sulṭānī 269, 272–273, 275
 Band-i Turkistān. 172
 Bangash, Bangashāt 97, 104, 116
 Bannū 116
 Bāqir Khān b. Ḥayāt Sulṭān Sadūzai (b. 1682) 82
barak 170
 Bārakzai Durrānī(s) 79, 106–108, 127, 129, 130, 163, 169, 192, 221
 Barbarī(s) 167
 Barbaristān 167
 Bardurrānī(s) 104, 115, 128–129, 138, 140, 144, 153, 163, 165, 183, 233
 Barkhurdār Khān, Durrānī *sardār* 128
 Barlās 172
 barley 30, 158, 172, 180, 188, 190, 245, 249, 255, 283
 Barnābād 5, 39, 133–139
 Batu b. Jochi (d. 1255) 9
 Bayāt(s) 92, 109, 117, 127, 129, 207
 Bāzār-i Malik 23
 Bēgler Khān Chāpushlū, chief of Darra Gaz 206, 219, 261
bēglerbēg(ī), provincial governor 51–52, 58, 73, 76, 80, 91–92, 110, 117, 120, 125, 128, 138, 180, 222, 253–257, 271, 284
 Berke b. Jochi, *khān* of the Golden Horde (r. 1256–1267) 70
 Bhakkar 70, 75–76, 297
 Bihbūd Khān Alakūzai (d. 1880) 177
 Bihbūd Khān Tātār, *bēglerbēgī* of Herat (1750) 110, 154
 Biktash Khān Ustājilū, Safavid governor of Mārūchāq (–1600) and Marv (1600–1608) 56, 268
 Bīrjand 30, 48, 117, 193, 195, 205, 207, 213–214, 233, 283
 Biṣṭām 15, 56, 63, 67, 116, 141, 195, 217, 228
 Biyārjumand 217
 Brāhū'ī(s) 91
 Būjāy b. Dānishmand Bahādur, Mongol commander 22
 Bujnūrd (Buzūnjird, Buzunjird) 117, 195, 205–207, 209–210, 212–213, 216, 219–220, 224, 228–229, 231–232, 235, 237, 248, 250–251, 256–258, 260, 263, 281
 Bukhārā 7, 8, 12, 21–22, 37, 45, 50, 62–65, 67, 77, 92, 94, 98–99, 114–115, 130, 148, 150, 152, 155–156, 162, 170, 195, 207, 229, 243, 246, 248–251, 263, 266–267, 269, 271–275, 285, 298
 Buland Khān Bāmīzai, governor of Kashmīr (1763–1765) 113
bulūk, *bulūkāt* 2, 16–17, 24–25, 27, 36, 58, 116–118, 121, 135–136, 138, 140, 181, 184, 190, 294
 Bunyād b. Muḥammad Shāh Hazāra 128, 133, 179, 187, 220–222, 249
 Burdalyk (Burdaliq) 66
 Burj-i 'Alam Khān 286
 Burj-i 'Alī Asad 22, 183
 Burj-i Gulshan-i Bahrām (Burj-i Khvāja 'Abd al-Miṣr) 22, 163, 183
 Burj-i Khākistar (Burj-i khāk bar sar) 22, 183, 186
 Burj-i Sham'āniyān (Burj-i 'Alī Sulṭān. Burj-i Fīlkhāna) 22, 183
 Burūjird 227, 230
 Bushire (Būshihr) 152, 209, 234, 238, 256, 264
 Bust (near present-day Lashkargāh) 52, 60, 70, 198–199, 282, 297
buzurg, *buzurgān* 27, 38, 96, 136, 232

 Cairo (Miṣr) 6, 10, 20, 98
 camel 23, 30, 33, 40, 76, 78, 82, 92, 110, 113, 131, 137, 139, 164, 170, 213–215, 244–245, 248, 251–252, 275–277, 279, 282, 292, 300
 cashmere 173, 218, 222, 225
 Chaghatai, son of Chingiz Khān (d. 1242) 9–10
 Chaghcharān 169, 179–180
 Chaghri Bēg, brother of Tughril Bēg, Saljūq ruler of Khurāsān (r. 428–452/1036–1060) 9
 Chahār (Chār) Maḥāll (Gujrāt, Aurangābād, Siyālkōṭ, Pasrūr) 111, 117
chahār (chār) ūymāq 73, 92, 118–119, 140
 Chahār Bāgh (Barnābād) 135
 Chahār Bāgh (Mashhad) 123–124
 Chahār Lang Bakhtiyārī(s) 207
 Chahār Ṣada 180
 Chahār Sū 20, 23–24, 32, 59, 163, 182–184
chahār yār 154
 Chahchaha 92, 141
 Chakhānsūr 116, 192, 283, 286, 288–289, 291
 Chāldirān 46, 56
chaman 16, 63, 295
 Chaman-i Bīd 99, 178, 279
 Chamishgazak Kurd(s) 56, 92, 109, 121
chāpār 151, 238
chapāv 249
 Chāpushlū(s) 206, 223, 231, 250, 261, 281
chār sūq 108
 Chārjūy (Chahārjūy, Āmūya, present-day Türkmenabat) 11, 65–67, 246, 270–273
charkhchībāshī 120
chārvā 258, 260
 Chashma-yi Kūbān 31
 Chashma-yi Safīd 36
 Chhachh Hazāra 116
 Chīchaktū 50, 73, 114, 158, 170
 Chihil Dukhtarān 32, 42, 64
 Chihilgazī river 29
 Chināb (Chenab) 76, 82

- Chinārān 109, 122, 127, 141, 206–207, 211, 219, 223–224, 253
- Chingiz (Chingīz) Khān (d. 624/1227) 9, 11, 32, 34, 45, 66, 69, 83, 99, 117, 172, 181, 185, 240, 286, 295, 297
- Chingizī(s) 119
- Chisht 31, 42–43, 103, 180
- Chishtīya 81
- Chowdur(s) 246
- chumūr* 258, 260
- Clavijo, Ruy Gonzáles de (d. 1412) 65–67
- copper 19, 31, 94–95, 139, 266
- cotton, see also *panba* 36, 76–78, 114, 180, 213, 267
- daftardār* 132
- Dāghistān 77, 92, 194
- dahana* 90, 96, 117, 270
- Dahana-yi Dhū al-Faqār 194, 262
- daimcha* 32
- Dāmghān 51, 63, 92, 141, 195, 217, 254, 257
- dāng* 33, 52
- Dāniyāl Bī, Manghīt ruler (r. 1758–1785) 12, 115, 271
- dār al-khilāfa* 15, 208
- dār al-qarār* 93, 107
- dār al-salām* 15
- dār al-salṭana* 15, 50–51, 53, 57, 83, 136, 138, 298
- Dārā Shukūh b. Shāh Jahān, Mughal prince (d. 1069/1659) 78, 80
- Darband 92
- Darra Gaz 64, 86, 91–92, 95, 195, 206–207, 210, 219–220, 223, 231, 235, 243, 247–248, 250–251, 259, 261–263, 281
- Darra Khargūsh 180
- Darra-yi Būm 221
- Darra-yi Sūf 35, 71
- dārūgha* 114
- darvīsh* 105–106, 152
- Darvīsh ‘Alī Khān Hazāra (d. 1772) 118–120, 128, 138, 140, 171–172, 180
- Darvīsh ‘Alī Khān Jamshīdī 169
- Darzai Fīrūzkūhī(s) 179
- Dāsh Ribāṭ 275, 277
- Dashtak 286–287
- Dasht-i Gurgān 252
- Dasht-i Kavīr 115, 117, 209
- Dasht-i Lūt 117, 214
- Dasht-i Qīpchāq 65
- daulat* 46, 55, 67, 79, 84, 111, 153, 157, 197–198, 298
- Daulatābād 127, 224
- Davandar mountain 30–31, 169
- dāvṭalab* 191
- Dāy Zangī 169, 192
- Delhi (Shāh Jahānābād) 37, 45, 48, 70, 90–91, 93, 96, 98, 101–102, 111, 113
- Ḍēra Ghāzī Khān 113, 116
- Ḍēra Ismā‘īl Khān 113, 116
- Ḍērajāt 298
- Develū Qājār(s) 225, 234–236, 253–254
- dhikr* 19, 155, 157, 196
- Dhū al-Faqār b. Zamān Sadūzai, elder brother of Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai 87–89, 102, 105, 154
- Dhū al-Qadr Qizilbāsh 55
- dih*, *dihāt*, *dīhāt* 36, 40, 94
- Dih-i Khvāja 108
- Dih-i Shaikh 86
- Dilārām 87–88
- Dilāvar b. Shāh Valad Sulṭān Tāymanī (contemporary of Nādir Shāh) 96–97, 180
- Dilāvar Khān Ishāqzai Madad Khān, *sipahsālār* of Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 127–128
- Dīn Muḥammad b. ‘Aṭā Muḥammad Alakūzai, governor of Kurukh 191
- Dīn Muḥammad b. Jānī Muḥammad, Tuqai-Timurid prince (972–1007/1564–1598) 49–50, 72–73
- dīnār* 8, 32, 40, 51–52, 71, 132, 135, 271
- dirakht* 36
- Dīv Sulṭān Rūmlū, Safavid governor of Balkh (appointed in 1513) 56
- dīvān* 57, 97, 135, 199
- dīvānbēgī* 50, 128
- donkey 28, 33, 38, 92, 97, 113, 139, 164, 265, 267, 287
- Dū Barādarān valley 24
- Dū Shākh mountain 39, 81, 87
- Du‘ā b. Burāq, Chaghatai ruler (r. 1282–1306/7) 38
- Dūkī 70, 76, 78
- dūlāna* apples 35
- Dūrī river 93
- Dūrmīsh Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1522–1526), 51, 53, 56–58
- Durrānī(s) 12, 24, 74, 82, 93, 98, 101, 104–107, 110–112, 119–120, 127–130, 138–140, 143, 153, 163, 169, 174, 179, 180, 189, 191, 199, 207, 272, 281
- Durūn 52, 92, 243, 247, 259
- dūshāb* 31, 37
- Dūst Muḥammad b. Pāyanda Muḥammad, Mūḥammadzai ruler (r. 1826–1839, 1843–1863) 143–144, 150–151, 166, 172, 177, 185, 192, 201, 227, 233–235, 239, 241, 288
- Dūst Muḥammad b. Qīlich Tīmūrī 133
- Dūst Muḥammad Khān Nārūy Balūch (d. 1855–56) 286–287
- Egri Gudhar (crossing on Murghāb river) 275
- elephant 113, 182, 218

- Emreli Turkmens 259
 Ērān-Shahr 6
 Erzerum 207
 Euphrates 6, 10, 46, 65, 83, 294
 Fakhr al-Dīn b. Shams al-Dīn, Kartid ruler (r. ca. 697–707/1298–1308) 20–21, 27, 70–71
 Farāh 3, 15, 28, 34, 50–51, 56, 60, 63, 68, 70–73, 87–90, 93–94, 98, 110–111, 116, 122, 130–131, 133, 152, 158, 174, 180–181, **189–190**, 191–192, 195, 213, 231, 233, 282–285, 287, 289, 297
 Farāh Rūd 30, 64, 281, 283
 Farghāna 45, 156, 250
 Farīdūn b. ‘Abbās Mīrzā (d. 1272/1855), governor of Mashhad (1854–1855) 209, 230, 232–233, 260, 264
 Farīdūn Khān Gurjī 125–126
 Farīdūn Khān, governor of Astarābād (1606–1621) 252
 Farmakān 70
 Farmānābād 175
 Farrukh Siyar, Mughal ruler (r. 1713–1719) 85
 Fārs 11, 71, 92–93, 124, 148, 207–208, 222, 225, 231, 239–240
 Fārsī 180
 Fārsīvān(s) 153, 159, 161–164, 166
 Fārsīzabān, Fārsīzabānān 153, 163
 Fāryāb 71, 158, 297
 Faryūmad 52
faṣīl 22, 163
 Faṭḥ ‘Alī b. Ḥusain, Kayanid governor of Sīstān (1737–1747) 285
 Faṭḥ ‘Alī Khān Afshār (d. 1132/1719–20), *bēglerbēgī* of Mashhad under Shāh Sulṭān Ḥusain 87, 94, 284
 Faṭḥ ‘Alī Khān Qājār Develū 254
 Faṭḥ ‘Alī Khān Qājār Quyūnlū (d. 1139/1726), governor of Mashhad (1720) 199, 253
 Faṭḥ ‘Alī Khān Shīrāzī, Mīrzā, governor of Mashhad and *mutavallī* of Imām Rīzā’s shrine (1891–1893) 237
 Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh b. Ḥusain Qulī, Qājār ruler (r. 1212–1250/1797–1834) 3, 54, 63, 129–130, 147–149, 160, 196–200, 207–212, 215, 217, 219–220, 222, 224–225, 227, 240, 254–255, 259, 290, 298
 Faṭḥ Muḥammad b. Muḥammad Akbar Khān Muḥammadzai, governor of Herat (d. 1871) 145, 192
 Faṭḥ Shāhdūst b. Pāyanda Muḥammad Muḥammadzai 130–131, 143, 221–222, 241, 247, 286
 Faṭḥullāh Bēg b. Muḥammad ‘Azīm Atālīq Fīrūzkūhī 179
 Faṭḥullāh Khān Sadūzai Kāmran khēl Vafādār Khān, nadīm-i khāṣṣ of Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 128
 Fāṭima Sulṭān Bēgum bt. Shāh Sulṭān Ḥusain Ṣafavī 121
fatvā 160, 168
 Fāzīl Bī b. Dāniyāl Bī Manghīt 272
 figs 35
fīrqa, *fīrqahā* 70, 73, 75, 92
 Fīrūz al-Dīn b. Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai, Ḥājī, ruler of Herat (1801–1818) 130–132, 139, 155–158, 187, 218–221
 Fīrūzābād Gate 22–23, 183
 Fīrūzkūh (present-day Iran) 63, 178
 Fīrūzkūh, Ghurid capital (present-day Afghanistan) 71, 73, 178, 285, 297
 Fīrūzkūhī(s) 35, 72–73, 118–119, 158, 162, 169–174, **178–179**, 180, 222, 226, 247, 249
 Fūlād Bēg Qājār, governor of Marv (1136–1138/ca. 1724–1726) 269
 Fūshanj (present-day Zindajān) 7, 17, 29–30, 38, **39**, 42, 59, 62, 135, 297
 Ganja 84, 206
 Garmsīr, Garmsīrāt 15, 34, 72, 93, 96, 285–286
 Gauhar Shād, wife of Shāh Rukh 20, 27, 53, 64
 Gavurz 243, 260–262
 Gāzargāh 27–28, 31, 68, 94, 129, 184–185
 Georgian(s) 56, 76, 80, 84–86, 252–253
 Gharjīstān 17, 30, **35–36**, 41, 43, 50, 57–58, 60, 71–73, 96–97, 169, 176, 179–180, 195, 240, 297
 Ghauth al-Dīn Khān, general under Amīr ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Khān 174
 Ghāzān b. Arghūn, Ilkhanid ruler (r. 694–703/1295–1304) 38, 71
 Ghāzī Khān Tekelū, Safavid governor of Herat (1530–1533) 53, 57
ghāzī, *ghāziyān* 90, 92, 102, 104–105, 111, 138, 141, 154, 165
 Ghaznī (Ghazna, Ghaznīn) 9, 15, 35, 70–72, 75, 98, 116, 143, 192, 194–195, 217, 282
 Ghijduvān 45, 56–57, 268
 Ghilzai Pashtūn(s) 48, 70, 73, 75, 79, 81, 84, 86–89, 92–93, 99, 104, 116, 123, 128, 154, 169, 284
 Ghiyāth al-Dīn I b. Shams al-Dīn, Kartid ruler (r. 707–729/1308–1328/29) 19, 21, 23, 26, 297
 Ghiyāth al-Dīn II Pīr ‘Alī b. Mu‘izz al-Dīn Ḥusain, Kartid ruler (r. 772–791/1370–1389) 38
 Ghiyāth al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Fakhr al-Dīn, Ghurid ruler (r. 558–599/1163–1203) 19
 Ghiyāth al-Dīn Pīr Aḥmad, Khvāja, *vazīr* to Shāh Rukh (1417–1447) 37
ghulām 5, 56, 125, 253
 Ghulām ‘Alī Khān, Afsharid military governor of Herat 119
 Ghulām Ḥaidar b. Dūst Muḥammad Khān Muḥammadzai (1819–1858) 144, 167, 192
 Ghulām Jabbār Khān Qullarāqāsī, governor of Ghūriyān 192
 Ghulām Qādir Khān b. Amīr, governor of Shakībān 192
 Ghulām Rīzā Khān, governor of Mashhad (1894–1895) 237

- Ghūr, Ghūrāt 17, 30, **34–35**, 36, 41, 43, 51, 57, 63, 71–73, 116, 152, 169, 177, 180–181, 190–192, 282–283, 297
- Ghūrbānd 75, 116
- Ghūriyān (Qūriyān) 23, 39, 49, 52, 59, 88, 98, 117, 134, 137–139, 141, 145–146, 155, 157, **187**, 190–191, 193, 215, 218–222, 226–227, 229, 233, 239–241
- Ghūrvān 26
- Ghūrvān-Pāstān 25–26, 190
- Gidā Khān Tāymanī 171
- Gīlān 225, 230, 240, 254
- Girāyli(s) 206–207
- Girishk 3, 28, 52, 192
- goat 33, 92, 172
- Gök Tepe 151–152, 261–262, 266, 276
- Göklen Turkmen(s) 129, 170, 213, 225, 244, 248–251, 254–260
- gold 16, 21, 35, 53–54, 78, 94–95, 98, 126–127, 139, 154, 158, 161, 163, 181, 208, 219–220, 225, 228–230, 266, 268
- Golden Horde 9–10, 70
- grapes 1, 8, 15–16, 28, 31, 35–37, 39, 41, 181, 245, 295, 302
- Gudāra (Guzāra, Ghudhara) 25, 28–29, 184, 190
- Gūd-i Zira 282–283
- Gujrānvāla 112
- Gujrāt 111, 117
- Gul Muḥammad b. Yūsuf Hazāra 175
- guldasta* 53, 94, 154
- Gulistān 219, 239, 291
- gumāshta* 156
- Gunbad-i Qābūs 252, 257–259
- Gurgān 3, 6, 8, 51, 212–213, 219, 235, 237, 243, 246, 248, 250, 252–258, 293
- Gurgīn Khān (Shāh Navāz Khān), Safavid governor of Qandahār (d. 1709) 52, 82, 84–86
- Gurzīvān 15, 35
- Habībullāh Khān Vardak, Mustaufī, governor of Herat (–1876) 146, 192
- hadd*, *hudūd* 8, 115, 128, 196, 199, 241, 297–298, 301
- Haft Lang Bakhtiyārī(s) 207
- Haidar b. Shāh Zamān Sadūzai (b. ca. 1787) 116
- Haidar Qulī Sihām al-Daula b. Najaf Qulī Shādillū, (d. 1288/1871–72), governor of Bujnūrd (1861–1871/72) 212, 235, 257, 260
- Haidar Tūra b. Shāh Murād, Manghīt ruler (r. 1800–1826) 12, 271–272
- Hājji b. ‘Abd al-Ghanī Alakūzai 92
- Hājji Bī Mīng, governor of Maimana (appointed in 1750) 114
- Hājji Jamāl Khān Bārakzai 106
- Hājji Khān Tīmūrī 131
- Hājji Manūchihr Khān, governor of Astarābād (1653–1654/55) 253
- Hājji Mīrzā Āqāsī, *ṣadr-i a‘zam* (1251–1264/1835–1848) 159, 168, 225–226, 228, 287, 299–300
- Hājji Mīrzā ‘Askarī, *imām jum‘a* of Mashhad 230
- Hājji Mullā Mūsā, ‘*ālim* of Herat (d. 1222/1807) 155, 218
- hākīm*, *hukkām* 53, 57, 79, 93, 114, 128, 138, 162, 241, 266
- hākīm-i shar‘* 162
- Ḥalīm Kākārī, Mullā 158
- halvā* 32, 37
- Hamadān 55, 93, 286
- hamlet, see also *mazra‘a* 16, 30–31, 34, 36, 38, 135, 294
- hammām* 134–135, 138
- Hāmūn lake 282–283
- Ḥamza Mīrzā Ḥishmat al-Daula b. ‘Abbās Mīrzā (1235–1297/1819–1880), governor of Mashhad (1847–1848, 1859–1860, 1869–1871) 162, 191, 228–229, 234–235, 239–241, 264–265, 276–280, 289
- Ḥanafī 155–156, 164–165
- haqāyiq nigār* 148
- Harāt-Rūd 17, 29, **31**, 51–52, 57, 62, 73, 84, 176, 190
- Harī Rūd (Rūd-i Mālān) 7, 23–26, 28–31, 33, 38–39, 43, 64, 68, 84, 110, 135–137, 152, 155, 169, 182, 184, 188, 190, 193, 201, 243, 262, 265
- Hārūn al-Rashīd, fifth caliph of the Abbasid dynasty (r. 170–193/786–809) 206
- Hārūt Rūd 283
- Ḥasan ‘Alī Bēg Bisṭāmī Mu‘ayyir al-Mamālik, Afsharid official 95
- Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Shujā‘ al-Saltāna b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār (1204–1270/1789–1853/54), governor of Mashhad (1816–1827) 131–133, 210, **220–223**, 224–225, 241, 247, 255
- Ḥasan b. Ḥusain Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1619–1638/1641) 58–59, 68, 136, 184, 300
- Ḥasan Khān Qarā‘ī, brother of Amīr Khān 127
- Ḥasan Khān Sālār, see Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Sālār (d. 1850)
- hasham*, *aḥshām*, *aḥshāmāt* 57, 97
- Hāshim Khān Shahrakī 286
- Hashtādān 193
- Hauḏ-i Chārsū 184
- Ḥayāt b. Khudādād Sadūzai (d. 1728) 81–82, 86, 148
- Hazār Jarīb 64
- Hazār Mīsh 33
- Hazāra(s) 34, 36–37, 72, 79, 85, 92–93, 97, 116, 118–120, 128–129, 133, 137–138, 140, 157, 160–163, 165, 167–175, 178–180, 191, 195, 205, 210, 216, 220–223, 226, 230, 247, 249, 279
- Hazārasb 246, 273
- Hilmand (Hirmand) 64, 70–72, 82, 94, 118, 129, 151, 235, 281–283, 286, 288–290

- Hind (Hindistān, Hindūstān) 8, 12, 18, 54, 62, 65, 75, 90, 98–99, 105, 109, 111, 113, 200, 293, 297–298, 300
- hindivāna*, see also watermelons 38, 282
- Hindū Kush 151–152
- Hindu(s) 139, 169
- Hişār (Hişār-i Shādmān) 67
- Ḥishmat al-Daula, see Ḥamza Mīrzā Ḥishmat al-Daula (1819–1880)
- Ḥishmat al-Mulk, see Mīr ‘Alam III Ḥishmat al-Mulk Khuzaima (d. 1891)
- Ḥishmat al-Mulk, see Mīr ‘Alī Akbar Ḥishmat al-Mulk b. Mīr ‘Alam III Khuzaima
- horse 8, 9, 33, 35, 37, 61, 73, 77–78, 92, 97–98, 113, 126, 131, 134–135, 138–139, 149, 151, 161, 170, 173, 175, 188, 214–215, 244–245, 249, 251, 254, 257, 262, 279, 282–283
- hostage 173, 210, 220, 224–225, 232, 254–255, 280, 288–289
- Hujjat al-Sultān, see ‘Alī Naqī Mīrzā Hujjat al-Sultān b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār
- ḥukm, aḥkām* 157, 165, 168, 240
- Ḥukūmat b. Miẓrāb Ming, Mīr of Maimana (r. 1847–1862) 170–171, 232
- ḥukūmat-i a‘lā* 116
- Hulākū b. Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Qājār 223
- Hülegü b. Toluy, founder of the Ilkhanid dynasty (r. 654–663/1256–1265) 9–10, 66, 70–71
- Humāyūn b. Bābur, Mughal emperor (r. 937–950/1530–1543, 962–963/1555–1556) 49, 58, 74
- Humāyūn b. Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 116, 129
- Hurmūz 78
- Ḥusain ‘Alī Khān Darzai Fīrūzkūhī 171
- Ḥusain ‘Alī Mīrzā Farmānfarmā b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār 212
- Ḥusain b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī, Kayanid governor of Kirmān under Shāh Sultān Ḥusain (?–1717/18) 284
- Ḥusain b. Mīr Vais Hūtak 89, 97, 154
- Ḥusain Bēg Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1510–1512) 55–57
- Ḥusain Khān Qājār Qazvīnī, Qājār general 223
- Ḥusain Khān Shāhseven Shihāb al-Mulk (d. 1292/1875), governor of Mashhad (1289–1292/1872–1875) 236
- Ḥusain Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1526–1528/29), brother of Dürmīsh Khān Shāmlū 53, 57
- Ḥusain Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1598–1619) 56, 58
- Ḥusain Khān, governor of Astarābād (1639–1641) 253
- Ḥusain Khān, Ḥāj Mīrzā (d. 1881), Mushīr al-Daula, Sipahsālār-i A‘ẓam, *ṣadr-i a‘ẓam* (1871–1873), governor of Mashhad (1298/1881) 236, 243
- Ḥusain Qulī b. Ishāq Qarā‘ī (d. 1231/1816) 215, 219, 220
- Ḥusain Qulī b. Muḥammad Ḥasan Qājār Quyūnlū (d. 1191/1777) 254
- Ḥusām al-Saltāna, see Sultān Murād Mīrzā Ḥusām al-Saltāna (1818–1883)
- Hūtak Ghilzai(s) 84–86, 88–89, 104, 123, 284
- Hyderabad 47, 60
- Hyrkania (Jurjān/Gurgān) 6
- Ibrāhīm b. Khān Jahān Sanjarānī Balūch 287–289, 291
- Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad Shāh Hazāra 133, 220, 222
- Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad Tāymanī (d. 1855–56) 169, 180
- Ibrāhīm Kalāntar Shīrāzī I‘timād al-Daula, Ḥājī Mīrzā Muḥammad (d. ca. 1801), *ṣadr-i a‘ẓam* (1209–1215/1794–1801) 197–198
- Ibrāhīm Khalīl Khān Khū‘ī, Qājār military commander 228
- Ibrāhīm Khān Durrānī 139
- Ibrāhīm Lōdī, sultan of Delhi (r. 923–932/1517–1526) 45
- Ibrāhīm Shāh, see Muḥammad ‘Alī Bēg b. Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Afshār (r. 1748–1749)
- Ibrāhīm Sultān Mauṣillū, brother of Amīr Khān 58
- Ibrāhīm Sultān, *dārūgha* of Mashhad 229
- Ikhlaṣīya 20, 27
- īl, īlāt* 76, 92–93, 97, 119, 122, 158, 165, 208, 248
- īlāt-i khāṣṣa* 119
- Īlbārs Khān, ruler of Khīva (r. 1140–1153/1728–1740) 91
- īlkhānī* 207, 209, 211–213
- ‘Imād al-Mulk see Muḥammad Bāqir ‘Imād al-Mulk Zangū‘ī (d. 1894)
- imām* 67, 156, 229, 268
- imām jum‘a* 230
- Imām Qulī b. Dīn Muḥammad, Tuqai-Timurid Khan (r. 1020–1051/1612–1642) 50
- Imām Qulī b. Muḥammad Rizā Qājār Quyūnlū, governor of Astarābād (1207–1214/1792–1799) 255
- Imām Qulī Mīrzā Sarīq 277
- Imām Rizā, see ‘Alī b. Mūsā al-Rizā, eighth Imām (d. 203/818)
- Imām Shāhib 115
- Imāmverdī Bayāt, governor of Nīshāpūr (appointed ca. 1848) 229
- indigo 77, 82, 97, 156
- Indus (Sind, Mihrān, Rūd-i Atek) 58, 66, 75–77, 90, 101, 113, 130, 293, 297–298, 302
- Injīl (Injīr) 23, 25–27, 138, 184, 190
- iqīm, aqālīm* 17, 98, 107
- iqṭā‘* 64
- Irānzamīn* 67
- ‘Irāq Gate (Ziyād Gate) 20, 22–23, 183, 186
- ‘Irāq, ‘Irāqain 9, 11, 32, 77, 83–84, 92, 116–117, 122, 124, 207, 225, 240
- ‘Irāq-i ‘Ajam, see also *‘ajam* 11, 52, 293
- ‘Irāq-i ‘Arab 84
- iron 16, 23, 31, 36, 77, 214, 258

- ‘Īsā Khān Bardurrānī Sartīp, *vazīr* of Herat (d. 1856) 144, 163, 165, 233
- Isfahān 3, 9, 47, 50, 54, 62–63, 68, 78–79, 84–90, 109, 117, 123, 127, 149, 156, 159, 209, 225, 230, 239, 269, 284, 300
- Isfarāyin 49, 51–52, 92, 115, 175, 212, 229
- Isfizār (Sabzavār-i Harāt, Sabzār, present-day Shindand) 3, 17, 28, 30, 34, 36, 51–52, 56, 70, 72, 81, 87, 116–117, 133, 169, 180, 189, 190–192, 195, 231, 233, 297
- īshān* 160, 257
- Ishāq Khān Qarā’ī (d. 1231/1816) 187, 205, 210, 214–215, 218–219, 236
- Ishāqzai Durrānī(s) 127, 131, 169, 191
- ishik āqāsī*, *ishik āqāsibāshī* 91, 101, 112, 146, 192, 199, 228, 230, 269–270
- ‘Ishqābād (Ashgabat) 151, 243, 259–260, 262
- Iskandar b. Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai 116
- Iskandar b. Āqā’ī Hazāra 220
- Iskandar b. Fath ‘Alī Qājār Develū 226
- Islām b. Darvīsh ‘Alī Hazāra (d. 1771) 120
- Islām Khān Pūpalzai Durrānī, military commander of Herat under Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 128
- Ismā’īl I b. Ḥaidar, Safavid ruler (r. 907–930/1501–1524) 10, 45–48, 50–51, 55–56, 58, 62–64, 84, 195–196, 207–208, 240, 268
- Ismā’īl I b. Ibrāhīm Khuzaima ‘Arab, contemporary of Nādir Shāh 96, 122, 213
- Ismā’īl II b. Ṭahmāsp, Safavid ruler (r. 984–985/1576–1577) 46, 53
- Ismā’īl II Shaukat al-Mulk b. Mīr ‘Alam III Khuzaima, governor of Qāyin (appointed ca. 1891) 213, 291
- Ismā’īl Khān Dāmghānī, Qājār general 219
- Ismā’īl Khān Sabzavārī, governor of Marv (1145/1732–33) 270
- ithnā ‘asharī* 154, 160
- I’timād al-Daula, see Āqā Khān Nūrī I’timād al-Daula
- I’timād al-Daula, see Ibrāhīm Kalāntar Shīrāzī I’timād al-Daula (d. ca. 1801)
- I’timād al-Saltāna, see Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Ṣanī‘ al-Daula I’timād al-Saltāna (1843–1896)
- I’tizād al-Daula, see Anūshīrvān Khān Qājār I’tizād al-Daula (d. 1285/1868)
- īvān* 19, 53–54, 94, 134, 186, 208
- iyālat*, *iyālāt* 120, 138, 252
- Ja’far Khān Abdālī (d. 1106/1694–95) 81
- Ja’far Khān Bayāt, governor of Nīshāpūr (ca. 1750) 110
- Ja’far Khān Ustājilū, Safavid governor of Herat (ca. 1124–1129/ca. 1713–1717) 87
- Ja’far Khān Za’farānlū Vakīl al-Daula, contemporary of Shāh Rukh Afshār 109, 122–123, 125, 211
- Ja’far Qulī Mīr-i Panj b. Najaf Qulī Shādillū (d. 1275/1858–59), governor of Bujnūrd, Astarābād (1854–1858/59) 210, 212, 228–231, 256, 260, 281
- Ja’farbāy Yomut(s) 255–256, 258
- jāgīr* 81–82
- Jahān Khān, Durrānī Sardār 112, 114, 118
- Jahān Shāh b. Qarā Yūsuf, Qarā Quyūnlū ruler (r. 843–872/1439–1467) 10
- Jahān-Arghiyān 63, 219–220, 224
- Jahāngīr b. Akbar, Mughal ruler (r. 1014–1037/1605–1627) 37
- Jahāngīr b. Kāmran Sadūzai 191
- Jājarm 115, 195, 212, 229, 231, 257
- Jalāl al-Daula, see Sulṭān Ḥusain Jalāl al-Daula b. Nāṣir al-Dīn Shāh Qājār (1852–1868)
- Jalāl al-Dīn b. Kāmran Sadūzai 189, 191
- Jalāl al-Dīn Fīrūzshāh, Timurid *amīr al-umarā* (d. 848/1444–45) 20
- Jalāl al-Dīn I b. Maḥmūd, Kayanid governor of Sīstān under Shāh ‘Abbās I 284
- Jalāl al-Dīn II b. Bahrām, Kayanid ruler of Sīstān (?–1834) 286
- Jalālābād (Qal’a-yi Sabz), Sīstān 282, 284, 286
- Jalālābād, Nangarhār 90–91, 116, 143, 145, 192
- Jalāyir(s) 90–92, 96–97, 109, 123–125, 195, 208, 210, 223, 271
- Jām 15, 17, 30, 38, 39–40, 42, 51–52, 91, 96, 132–133, 141, 164, 175, 215, 218, 220, 222, 247, 297
- Jām Rūd 39
- Jamshīd Khān, governor of Astarābād (1654/55–1660/61) 253
- Jamshīdī(s) 51, 72–73, 84, 91–93, 97, 119–120, 137, 158, 160–161, 165, 167, 169–175, 176–178, 181, 216, 221–222, 226, 232, 246–247, 249, 274, 296
- Jānī Bēg b. Khvāja Muḥammad (d. 1529) 57
- Jānī Khān, Safavid *bēglerbēgī* of Herat 73
- jauz*, see also walnuts 31, 35–37
- Jew(s) 77, 165, 168–169, 275
- Jhelum (Jhilam) river 76, 112
- Jibāl 84
- Jibāl-i Turkistān 297
- jihād 94, 156–160, 164–165, 200, 229
- Jochi b. Chingiz Khān (1183–1227) 83
- Julfa 238
- Juvain 92, 115, 195, 230
- Jūy-i Alanjān 20, 25
- Jūy-i Injīl 20, 22, 25–28
- Jūy-i Kārtabār, see Shāh Jūy
- Jūy-i Mālān 25, 28
- Jūy-i Naṭara-yi Malik 25
- Jūy-i Nau (Jūy-i Sabqar) 25–28, 64
- Jūy-i Sulṭānī 25, 27–28

- Jūy-i Tizān 25
 Jūy-i Udvān 25
 Jūy-i Ziyāratgāh 25, 28
 Jūzjān 8, 71
- Kābul 12, 23, 37, 45, 74–75, 77–79, 81, 90–91, 97–99, 108, 111, 114–116, 128–131, 137, 143–147, 150–152, 158, 166–167, 172, 174, 179, 192, 195–196, 198, 200–201, 216–218, 220–222, 240, 270, 272, 289, 297–300
 Kābulī Mall, governor of Lahore (appointed in 1762) 112
 Kābulistān 241, 282
 Kadanai river 93
 Kadkan 222, 224
kadhudā 269, 274, 276, 292
 Kāfir Qal‘a (present-day Islām Qal‘a) 87, 89, 110, 221, 247
kāfir, *kuffār* 165, 168
 Kāfiristān 146
 Kāh 192
 Kahdistān 29, 63, 70
 Kahmard 75
 Kai Qubād, mythical Kayanid king 294
 Kaitū/Siyāh Būbak 29
 Kaivānlū Kurd(s) 207
 Kākar(s) 167, 180
kalāntar 84, 136, 153
 Kalāt-i Nādir 90, 92, 95–96, 98, 109, 123, 125, 141, 151–152, 195, 207–208, 211, 216, 223, 228, 232, 241, 243, 247, 260, 271
 Kalb ‘Alī Khān Afshār 270
 Kāl-i Shūr-i Jājarm 115
 Kāl-i Yāqūtī 241, 276
 Kālpūsh 63, 68
 Kamburāq (Kamīrān) 25, 29, 135, 190
 Kāmran b. Bābur (ca. 915–964/ca. 1509–1557) 49
 Kāmran b. Shāh Maḥmūd Sadūzai, d. 1257/1842 130–131, 133, 143–144, 155, 159–161, 170–171, 173, 180, 183, 189–191, 200, 219, 222–227, 286
 Kāmran Nā‘ib al-Saltāna b. Nāṣir al-Dīn Qājār (1856–1928), governor of Astarābād (1298/1880–81) 257
 Kana Gūsha 175, 178
 Karbalā’ 11, 228
kārgudhār 266
 Karīm al-Dīn Ḥabībullah, Safavid official 17
 Karīm Khān Zand (r. 1751–1779) 5, 101, 117, 125, 127, 199, 207, 254, 281
 Karīmdād b. Iskandar Hazāra (d. 1271/1854–55) 170, 173–174, 230, 249
 Karīmdād Khān Bāmīzai Pūpalzai ‘Arzbēgī, governor of Kashmīr under Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 113
kārīz 26, 28–29, 31, 36–39, 189, 259
Kārīz 37, 94, 175, 193, 222, 262
 Karnāl 101
 Kashaf Rūd 64, 262
 Kāshān river 3, 30
 Kashmīr 70, 75, 92–93, 101, 111–113, 115–116, 128, 139, 195, 298
 Katūl 258
 Kaufman, Konstantin Petrovich von (1818–1882), Governor General of Turkestan 251
 Kavānlū Kurds 208
 Kayanid dynasty 6, 96, 176, 241, 283–286, 294, 296
 Kayūmarth Mīrzā Īlkhānī Mulk Ārā Abvāb al-Mulk b. Fath ‘Alī Shāh Qājār, governor of Astarābād (1275–1277/1859–1861, 1283–1284/1866–1867) 257
 Kāzarūn 77
 Kāzīmain 228
 Khabūshān (Qūchān) 51–52, 56, 92, 101–102, 105, 117, 125, 127, 141, 195, 205–207, 210–213, 216, 219–220, 222–224, 229, 231–232, 234–235, 240–241, 248, 250, 255, 257, 260–263, 268–269, 271, 281, 285
 Khaisār 34, 36, 295
khākrīz 22
 Khākrīz 129
 Khalaj 69–70
 Khalīfa Sulṭān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1535) 57
khalīfa, *khulafā’* 67, 155, 157
khāliṣa, *khāliṣajāt* 138
 Khamyāb 194
 Khān Jahān Khān Sanjarānī Balūch 286
khān khēl 176, 180
 Khān Savār Khān Hazāra, governor of Marv (appointed in 1855) 232
khānaqāh 18, 31, 40, 133, 155
 Khāniqīn 238
khāqān 12, 240
 Khār, Khvār 92
khārāj 57, 200, 218, 222, 273, 297
khārūza, see also melons 32, 37–38, 40–41, 94, 267, 279
 Khārg 227, 233
 Khargird 37
 Kharqān 63
khārvār 28, 32–33, 38, 133, 138, 173, 190
 Khāsh 286, 289
 Khāsh Rūd 30, 118, 191, 283
 Khaṭak Pashtūn(s) 104
 Khatlān 158
 Khātūn, see Pul-i Khātūn, Takht-i Khātūn
khēl 119
khirqa-yi mutabarrika (*khirqa-yi mubāraka*) 108, 115
khīṭa-yi maḥrūsa 15, 41

- Khīva 12, 45, 65, 91–92, 94, 96, 147, 152, 160, 170, 176, 188, 219, 221, 223, 231–233, 242–251, 253, 255–257, 259–260, 264, 266, 272–274, 276, 280, 301
- Khīvaqābād 96
- Khiyābān (Herat) 25–27, 136, 181, 190
- Khiyābān (Mashhad) 54, 94–95, 208
- Khiyābān (Māzandarān) 253
- khiyār* 96, 191, 278
- Khizr b. Sadū Sadūzai (1582–1627) 80
- Khizr Chilībī Rūmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1535–1536). 57
- Khudādād (Khudakka, Khudakī) b. Khvāja Khizr Sadūzai (d. 1663 or 1665) 80, 82
- Khujand 250
- Khulm 114, 195
- Khūqand 246, 250, 273
- Khurram Khān, governor of Kashmīr (1766–1767, 1770), 113
- Khush Gate (Khushk Gate) 20, 22–23, 160, 183
- Khushhāl Khān Khaṭṭak, Pashtūn poet (d. 1689) 113
- khushkāba* 93
- Khusrau b. Āqā Mīrzā Tāymanī 180
- Khusrau Khān, governor of Astarābād (1621–1636) 252
- Khusrau, nephew of Gurgīn Khān 85–88
- Khusravī(s) 73
- khūṭba* 85, 98, 166, 200, 219–220, 224–225, 239, 268
- Khuzaima Arab(s) 5, 96, 102, 109, 121–122, 124–125, 130, 155, 195, 206, 211, **213–214**, 235, 271, 281, 287–288, 291
- Khūzistān 207
- Khvāf 15, 30, **36–37**, 40, 43, 49, 51, 56, 88, 96, 117–118, 132–133, 139–140, 159, 169–170, 191, 193, 205, 214, 222
- Khvāja Aḥrār (d. 1490) 67
- Khvāja Maḥmūd Achakzai 179
- Khvāja Rabī‘ (d. ca. 63/682–83) 54, 199, 253
- Khvāja Ṣāliḥ 65
- Khvājam Shakūr Khān Otamish Teke 262, 264
- khvānsālār* 225, 257
- Khvārazm 3, 9–12, 46, 65, 147, 170, 201, 205, 223, 240–241, 244–246, 248, 252, 256, 259–260, 268, 270, 296, 301
- Khyber Pass 104, 113, 129, 143
- Kilīf 65
- Kirkī 65–66
- Kirmān 3, 70–71, 101, 141, 149, 194, 205, 217, 223, 230, 254, 284, 287
- Kirmānshāh 93, 103
- Kish (Shahr-i Sabz) 22–23, 62, 67, 172, 271
- kishmish*, see also raisins 39
- Kīstan Qarā b. Jānī Bēg, Abu al-Khairid ruler of Balkh (r. 932–ca. 954/1526–1547) 11, 57
- Kopet Dagħ mountains 64, 90, 241, 243, 245, 247, 250–251, 259–260, 262, 301
- Krasnovodsk 250, 251
- Kūcha 169, 179
- Kuhandil b. Pāyanda Muḥammad Mūḥammadzai, Qandahār Sardār (1793–1855) 143, 163, 190–191, 221, 227, 231, 286–287
- Kuhandil b. Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai 116
- Kūhgīlū(s) 97
- Kūh-i Khvāja 282–283, 285
- Kūh-i Mīsh 92, 141
- Kūh-i Palangān 283
- Kurd, Akrād 5, 92, 102, 109, 121–125, 127, 129, 206–207, 209–212, 216, 223, 231, 234–235, 248, 250, 258, 262, 271, 281, 285
- Kurdistān 55, 205
- Küren Dagħ mountains 243, 252
- kūrnish* 107
- Kurūkh (Kurukh) 15, 17, 23, 29, **30–31**, 32, 51, 60, 73, 84, 117, 120, 155–156, 159, 169, 176–177, **187**, 188, 190–191, 233
- Kushk 26, 52, 174, 176–178, 188
- Kushk Rūd 26, 29–30, 32–33, 64, 169, 178, 188, 193–194, 266
- Kūsūya (Kuhsān) 17, 24, 29, **38–39**, 41, 43, 50, 87–88, 131, 146, **187–188**, 193, 201, 222, 234, 262, 297
- Laghman 75, 116
- Lahore (Lāhūr) 70, 76–77, 81, 90, 101, 103, 105–106, 111–113, 116–117, 130, 298
- Lāhūrī Bandar 76
- lala* 53
- lāla*, tulip 39
- Langar 88, 91, 176
- Langar-i Amīr Ghiyāth 32, 51, 267
- lapis lazuli 181
- Lār 101
- Lāsh 191, 285, 287
- Lāsh-Juvain 159, 191–193, 282–283, 285, 287–288
- lashkar* 32, 62, 71, 132, 141, 157, 197
- Layya 116, 129
- Lazgī(s) 91–93
- lead 31
- Lōdī dynasty 45, 76
- lucerne 172, 245
- Luṭf ‘Alī b. Ḥusain, Kayanid governor of Sīstān (r. 1729–1736/37) 96, 284–285
- Luṭf ‘Alī b. Ja‘far, last Zand ruler (r. 1789–1794) 254
- Luṭfābād 206, 251
- Mā varā’ al-nahr (Transoxiana) 6–11, 37, 45, 48–49, 51, 58, 62, 67, 72, 98–99, 155, 181–182, 240, 262, 270, 294

- Madad Khān, see Dilāvar Khān Ishāqzai Madad Khān, Sipahsālār
- madhhab* 43, 76, 153, 156, 165
- Madrasa al-Ghiyāthīya (Khargird) 37
- madrasa, madāris* 18–19, 23, 26–27, 38, 41–42, 58, 69, 99, 181
- Madrasa-yi Ghiyāthīya (Herat) 19, 26
- Maḥabbat Khān Pūpalzai 106
- maḥalla, maḥallāt* 121
- Maḥmūd b. ‘Alī Akbar Barnābādī (1030–1087/1620–1676) 135
- Maḥmūd b. Maḥmūd Jamshīdī (d. ca. 1817) 176
- Maḥmūd b. Mīr Vais Hūtak (d. 1725) 84, 88, 284
- Maḥmūd I, Kayanid governor of Sīstān (r. 1579–1587) 283
- Maḥmūd II b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī (d. 1727), Kayanid ruler of Mashhad (1723–1726) 86, 88, 90, 269, 284–285
- Maḥmūd b. Tīmūr Shāh, Sadūzai ruler (r. in Kābul 1801–1804, 1809–1818; r. in Herat 1818–1826) 103, 116, 127–133, 139, 143–144, 179, 187, 197, 218, 220–222, 286
- Maḥmūd Khān Jamshīdī (contemporary of Nādir Shāh Afshār, Tīmūr Shāh Sadūzai) 92, 176
- Maḥmūd Khān Qarāguzlū Nāṣir al-Mulk, governor of Mashhad (1886–1887) 236–237
- Maḥmūd Ṭarzī (1865–1933) 297
- Maḥmūdābād (near Marv) 268
- Maḥmūdābād (near Turbat-i Shaikh Jām) 175, 221, 224
- Maḥvilāt 40, 141, 222, 224
- Maihana 40, 42, 92, 125, 243, 247, 259–261
- Maimana 23, 30, 50, 73, 78, 84, 114–117, 143, 146, 152, 156, 158, 160, 164, 170–173, 176–177, 179, 192, 199, 226, 232, 249, 266
- Maivand 88, 129, 146, 177, 181
- majlis* 72, 106, 276
- Makhdūm A‘ẓam, *shaikh* 255
- Makhdūm Qulī b. Nūrvirdī Toqtamīsh Teke 261, 276
- Makrān 149, 285
- Mākū‘ī 228
- Mālān 24, 28
- māl-i amān* 61
- Malik Gate (Sarāy Gate, Darvāza-yi Arg) 22, 23, 26, 182–183
- Malik Ḥusain b. Fīrūz al-Dīn Sadūzai 219
- Malik Qāsim b. Fīrūz al-Dīn Sadūzai 130–131
- malik, mulūk* 8, 195
- māliya* 138
- Malyāb 275
- mamālik-i maḥrūsa* 42, 46, 98, 104, 111, 199–200, 241, 272, 298
- Mamish Khān Za‘farānlū (d. ca. 1217/1802) 127, 211
- mamlakat, mamālik* 46, 55, 90, 92, 117, 122, 168, 194, 197–198, 241, 252, 272–273, 298
- manāl-i dīvān* 128, 224
- Manghīt Uzbek(s) 12, 99, 114, 130, 155–156, 196, 271
- mangoes 82
- Mangū Qā‘ān b. Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Qājār 223
- Manṣūr Khān Shāhseven, Safavid governor of Mashhad 85
- maqarr al-salṭana* 50
- maqarr-i salṭanat* 50
- maqṣūra* 19–20, 186
- Marāṭhā(s) 112
- marble 20, 31, 94, 185
- Marco Polo (1254–1324) 71
- marghzār* 63
- Margiana (Marv) 6
- Mārkūh mountain 261
- Mārūchāq 26, 32–33, 49–51, 56, 60, 71, 73, 88–90, 96, 98, 158, 169, 172, 176–177, 188, 221, 265–266, 268–269, 284, 297
- Ma‘rūf al-Karkhī (d. 200/815–16) 159
- Marv (Marv-i Shāhījān) 6–7, 9–11, 16, 21, 26, 32, 45, 48–51, 53, 55–56, 58, 62, 64, 66, 71, 92, 94–95, 97, 117, 120, 125, 140, 148, 150–151, 156, 160, 164, 177, 195–199, 201, 206, 208, 210–211, 231–232, 234, 239–241, 243–249, 251, 253, 260–262, 264–265, **266–280**, 281–282, 284, 300–301
- Mārva 36, 169
- Marv al-Rūd, see Bālā Murghāb
- Maryam bt. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār 225
- Mashhad 4–5, 11–12, 17, 26, 30, 37, 42, 47–53, 55–57, 63–65, 68, 75, 84–96, 98–99, 102–103, 109–111, 115, 117–119, 121–128, 130–135, 137, 139, 141, 143, 147–148, 150–154, 157, 159, 162–163, 165–166, 168–171, 174–175, 178, 182, 191, 195–196, 199, 205–206, 208–211, 213–226, 228–230, 232–233, 236–242, 245, 247, 249, 253–254, 256–257, 262–272, 274, 276–277, 281, 284–285, 287–289, 300
- mashvarat* 105
- masjid, masājīd*, see also mosque 39
- Masjid-i Gauharshād 53
- masjid-i jāmi‘*, Friday mosque 18–20, 24, 28, 53, 70, 115, 134, 136, 138, 154, 160, 163–165, 167, 267, 295
- Masjid-i Lūpāch 34
- Mastūng 34, 52, 70, 72, 282
- Mas‘ūd b. Maḥmūd of Ghazna (r. 421–431/1030–1040) 9
- Maudūd b. Sadū Sadūzai (1584–1644) 80
- Maudūd Chishtī, Khvāja (d. 1132–33) 31, 42–43
- Maudūd Qulī Khān Fīrūzkūhī 179
- maujīb, mavājīb* 164
- Maulūdghāh 95–96
- Mauṣillū Qizilbāsh 58
- mavīz*, see also raisins 39
- Māzandarān 8, 11, 48, 61–62, 102, 150, 172, 178, 207, 224, 230, 244, 249, 253–257, 284

- Mazār-i Nau 136
- Mazār-i Sharīf 116, 145, 152
- Mazīnān 195, 249
- Mazra‘ 177
- mazra‘a*, pl. *mazāri‘*, see also hamlet 16, 36, 38, 135
- McNeill, Sir John (1795–1883), British envoy to Iran (1836–1842) 159–161, 173, 187, 194, 210, 226–227, 239, 249, 255–256, 286, 299
- melons, see also *kharbuza* 1, 16, 32, 37–38, 40–41, 77, 94, 180–181, 245, 267, 279–280, 282, 295
- Mihdī Qulī b. ‘Abd al-Jabbār Bēg Jamshīdī, Khān Āqā, Amīn al-Daula (d. 1880). 167, 172, 177
- mihmānkhāna* 135
- Mihr ‘Alī Khān Dāshlū 254
- Mihrāb Khān Charkhchībāshī (d. 1649), Safavid governor of Astarābād (1641–1649) and Qandahār (1649) 76, 80, 253
- Mihrāb Khān Qājār (d. 1032/1622–23), governor of Tabas (1002/1593–94), Khvāf and Bākhār (1007–1011/1598–1602), Mashhad (1011/1602–3), Marv (1608–10, 1614, 1617) 50, 56, 268
- Mihrdīl b. Pāyanda Muḥammad Mūḥammadzai (1797–1855) 191
- milk*, *amlāk* 134, 137, 199
- millat* 168, 297
- Mīr Afzal b. Dilāvar Ishāqzai Madad Khān, *nā‘ib* of Herat (1798–?) 131
- Mīr Afzal b. Purdil Muḥammadzai (b. 1810) 145, 192
- Mīr Aḥmad Khān Āqā b. ‘Abd al-Jabbār Bēg Jamshīdī (d. 1855) 177, 232, 274, 290
- Mīr ‘Alam I b. Ismā‘īl Khuzaima (d. 1754) 109, 121–125, 155, 211, 213
- Mīr ‘Alam II b. Mīr ‘Alī Khuzaima 213
- Mīr ‘Alam III Ḥishmat al-Mulk b. Asadullāh Khuzaima (d. 1891) 213, 235, 287–289, 291
- Mīr ‘Alī Akbar Ḥishmat al-Mulk b. Mīr ‘Alam III Khuzaima 213–214, 291
- Mīr ‘Alī b. ‘Alam I Khuzaima 130, 213
- Mīr Asadullāh Khān Tīmūrī Shaukat al-Daula 133
- Mīr Bēg Shahrakī, contemporary of Tīmūr Shāh 285
- Mīr Ḥasan Vakīl b. Mīr Muḥammad Zangū‘ī (d. 1235/1819–20) 130, 214
- Mīr Ḥāshim Khān Bēglerbēgī 174
- Mīr Hazār Khān Alakūzai, *sardār* of Turkistān (1751/52–?), governor of Kashmīr (ca. 1772–1793) 113–114
- Mīr Khūshā Bēg Hazāra 92
- Mīr Kūchik Sarbandī, contemporary of Nādir Shāh 285, 287
- Mīr Muḥammad b. ‘Alī Mardān Zangū‘ī 127
- Mīr Muḥammad Sulṭān Tāymanī 180
- Mīr Sayyid Muḥammad (Shāh Sulaimān II, d. 1163/1750) 47, 109–110, 118, 120–121, 123–124, 154, 254
- Mīr Vais Hūtak Ghilzai (d. 1715) 73, 84–88
- Mīrān Shāh b. Tīmūr 53
- mīr-i panj* 212
- Mīrzā ‘Alī Khān Develū, governor of Astarābād (1775) 254
- Mīrzā Faḡlullāh, *vazīr-i niẓām* of Khurāsān 232
- Mīrzā Taqī Khān Amīr Kabīr (1807–1852), *ṣadr-i a‘ẓam* (1848–1851) 144, 162, 191
- Mīshmast Arab(s) 73, 109, 206, 208, 215
- Mīzrāb Bī b. Suhrāb Bī, Qaṭaghan leader of Qunduz (r. 1756–?) 114
- Mīzrāb Khān Mīng, Mīr of Maimana (r. 1831–1845) 160, 170, 173, 226
- Mōngke b. Toluy, Great Khān of Mongols (r. 1251–1259) 297
- Mopak [Muvaffaq] Khān Teke (d. 1810) 262
- mosque 19–20, 27–28, 34, 38–41, 53, 58, 85, 94–95, 108, 138, 163, 168, 181–182, 186, 215, 249, 252, 267
- Mu‘ayyid al-Daula, see Abū al-Faṭḥ Mīrzā Mu‘ayyid al-Daula (d. 1911/12)
- Mu‘ayyir al-Mamālik, see Ḥasan ‘Alī Bēg Bisṭāmī Mu‘ayyir al-Mamālik
- Mughān 254
- Mughlānī Bēgum 112
- Mughūlbāsh 69–70
- Mughūlistān 9, 45
- Muḥammad Afzal b. Dūst Muḥammad Khān, Muḥammadzai ruler (r. 1866–1867) 145
- Muḥammad Akbar b. Dūst Muḥammad Khān Muḥammadzai (1816–1847) 144, 166
- Muḥammad ‘Alī b. Allāhyār Āṣaf al-Daula Qājār Develū 230
- Muḥammad ‘Alī Bēg Afshār Ibrāhīm Shāh b. Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (r. 1748–1749) 103, 109, 123
- Muḥammad ‘Alī Bēg Qājār, governor of Marv (ca. 1127–1136/ca. 1715–1723) 269, 271
- Muḥammad ‘Alī Khān Mākū‘ī, Qājār military commander 161, 228
- Muḥammad ‘Alī Khān Qarā‘ī 125
- Muḥammad ‘Alī Ṣadr al-Mamālik, *mutavallī* of Imām Rizā’s shrine (1893–1894/95) 237
- Muḥammad Amīn b. Allāh Qulī Khān, Qunghrāt ruler of Khīva (r. 1846–1855) 176, 232, 245, 247–248, 256, 264, 274, 276, 280
- Muḥammad Arshad I b. ‘Alī Akbar Barnābādī (1025–1114/1616–1703) 136
- Muḥammad Arshad II b. Abū Ṭālib Barnābādī (d. 1769–70) 135
- Muḥammad Āshtiyānī Qivām al-Daula, Mīrzā, *vazīr* of Khurāsān 278–279
- Muḥammad Ayūb b. Shīr ‘Alī Khān Muḥammadzai (1857–1914) 145–146, 177–178, 181, 192

- Muḥammad A‘zam b. Dūst Muḥammad Khān, Muḥammadzai ruler (r. 1867–1868) 145
- Muḥammad b. ‘Abdullāh Sadūzai 87, 89
- Muḥammad b. Amīr Tāymanī 119
- Muḥammad b. Ishāq Qarā‘ī 187, 215, 219–224, 247, 249
- Muḥammad b. Muḥammad Shāh Hazāra, *bēglerbēgī* of Herat 117, 128, 175
- Muḥammad Bābā Khān Chāpushlū (d. 1737) 91, 206
- Muḥammad Bāqir ‘Imād al-Mulk b. Mīr ‘Alī Naqī Zangū‘ī, Ḥājī (d. 1894) 214
- Muḥammad Ḥakīm Bī Manghīt (d. 1743) 12
- Muḥammad Ḥasan b. ‘Alī Ṣanī‘ al-Daula I‘timād al-Saltāna (1259–1313/1843–1896), *vazīr-i inṭibā‘āt* (1300–1313/1882–1896) 53, 148, 208, 236, 239, 241, 264, 272, 287
- Muḥammad Ḥasan b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Qājār Quyūnlū (d. 1759), *bēglerbēgī* of Astarābād and Gurgān (1750–1759) 199, 253–254
- Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Develū, *bēglerbēgī* of Astarābād (1762/63–?) 254
- Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Qājār Ishīk Āqāsībāshī 199
- Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Sālār b. Allāhyār Āṣaf al-Daula Qājār Develū (d. 1850) 162, 174, 191, 209–210, 228–232, 234, 241–242, 260, 264, 281
- Muḥammad Ḥusain b. Bairām ‘Alī Qājār ‘Izz al-Dīnlū, governor of Marv (1785–1788) 271
- Muḥammad Ḥusain b. Iskandar Hazāra 173–174
- Muḥammad Ḥusain Khān Develū (d. 1176/1762–63), *bēglerbēgī* of Astarābād under Nādir Shāh Afshār and from 1759–1762/3 253–254
- Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Khān Ṣāḥir al-Daula, brother of Nādir Shāh Afshār (d. 1738) 48, 89–91, 93, 269–270
- Muḥammad Ismā‘īl b. Yūsuf Hazāra, Shujā‘ al-Mulk, governor of Bākhār (1896–?) 175
- Muḥammad Kāẓim b. Abū al-Faṭḥ II Barnābādī (1726–1792), 137–138
- Muḥammad Khān Bēglerbēgī b. Allāhyār Āṣaf al-Daula Qājār Develū (d. 1850) 228–230
- Muḥammad Nizām al-Daula b. Aḥmad Qulī Hazāra 174, 179
- Muḥammad Khān Qājār, *nā‘ib* of Khurāsān under Muḥammad Valī Mīrzā Qājār (1803–1816) 218, 220
- Muḥammad Khān Qarāguzlū, Qājār envoy 197
- Muḥammad Khān Sharaf al-Dīn Tekelū, Safavid governor of Herat (1537–1557) 53, 57–58, 64
- Muḥammad Khān, Mīrzā, Sīpahsālār (d. 1284/1867) 235
- Muḥammad Khudābanda b. Ṭahmāsp, Safavid ruler (r. 1578–1587) 53
- Muḥammad Mihdī, Mīrzā, *mutavallī* of Imām Rizā’s shrine (d. 1803) 217
- Muḥammad Nāṣir b. Sulaimān (d. 1208/1793–94), Kayanid governor of Sīstān (ca. 1782–1794) 285
- Muḥammad Nāṣir Khān Qājār Develū Ṣāḥir al-Daula (d. 1294/1877), governor of Mashhad (1875–1877) 234–236
- Muḥammad Qāsim Bēg Afshār, Afsharid official in Herat (1741–1743) 91
- Muḥammad Qulī b. Allāhyār Āṣaf al-Daula Qājār Develū, minister of justice (appointed in 1866) 228, 230
- Muḥammad Qulī b. Najaf Qulī Shādillū 212
- Muḥammad Qulī b. Siyāvush Qullarāqāsī, governor of Astarābād (1652–1653) 253
- Muḥammad Raḥīm b. ‘Ivaz Īnāq, Qunghrāt ruler of Khīva (r. 1806–1825) 156, 205, 219, 221, 246, 260, 272
- Muḥammad Raḥīm b. Muḥammad Ḥakīm Bī, Manghīt ruler (r. 1747–1758) 12, 114
- Muḥammad Rizā b. Abū al-Faṭḥ Barnābādī (d. 1747) 137
- Muḥammad Rizā b. Malik Qāsim Sadūzai 174
- Muḥammad Rizā b. Muḥammad Kāẓim Barnābādī (1751–1815) 103, 133, 138–140
- Muḥammad Rizā Khān Qājār Quyūnlū, governor of Astarābād (1200–1207/1785–1792) 255
- Muḥammad Rizā Khān Sarbandī (d. 1848) 286–288
- Muḥammad Sarvar Khān, governor of Herat (1882–1887) 181, 193
- Muḥammad Shāh b. Abbās Mīrzā, Qājār ruler (r. 1834–1848) 143, 159–161, 179, 187, 194, 208, 210, 225–230, 238, 247, 255–256, 286, 299
- Muḥammad Shāh Khān Hazāra, *bēglerbēgī* of Herat under Tīmūr Shāh 121, 128, 220
- Muḥammad Shāh, Mughal ruler (r. 1719–1748) 101
- Muḥammad Shaikh Marvī, Turkmen leader 265
- Muḥammad Sharīf b. Dūst Muḥammad Khān Muḥammadzai (1827–1890) 192
- Muḥammad Shībānī b. Shāh Būdāq, Abu al-Khairid ruler (r. 907–916/1501–1510) 10, 45–46, 49, 51, 53, 61–64, 66, 72, 95, 196, 240, 262, 268
- Muḥammad Ṭāhir I b. Jalāl al-Dīn Arshad Barnābādī (915–990/1509–1582) 134–135
- Muḥammad Ṭāhir II b. ‘Alī Akbar Barnābādī (1027–1099/1617–1687) 135
- Muḥammad Taqī Khān ‘Arab Mīshmāst, governor of Turshīz (ca. 1830–1832) 215
- Muḥammad Taqī Rukn al-Daula b. Muḥammad Shāh Qājār (ca. 1262–1318/ca. 1846–1900/01), governor of Mashhad (1877–1881, 1881–1884, 1887–1891, 1897–1900/01) 133, 236–237, 265–266
- Muḥammad Taqī, Mīrzā, Afsharid governor of Kirmānshāh 103
- Muḥammad Taqī, Mīrzā, *mutavallī* of Imām Rizā’s shrine 230
- Muḥammad Tīmūr b. Muḥammad Shībānī (d. 1514) 57

- Muḥammad ‘Umar b. Muḥammad ‘Aẓīm Muḥammadzai, governor of Herat (1876–1879) 146, 193
- Muḥammad Valī b. Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār, governor of Mashhad (1803–1816) 63, 128, 132, 139, 147, 157, 206, 210–211, 215, 217, **218–220**, 272
- Muḥammad Valī b. Ḥājji Rīzā Qājār Develū, commander-in-chief of army in Khurāsān (1859–1860), governor of Astarābād (1850–1855, 1864–1866) 244, 256–257, 264
- Muḥammad Ya‘qūb b. Shīr ‘Alī Khān Muḥammadzai (1849–1923) 145–146, 177, 181, 192
- Muḥammad Yūsuf b. Malik Qāsim Sadūzai, ruler of Herat (r. 1855–1856) 144, 158–159, 174, 233
- Muḥammad Zamān Khān Pūpalzai Durrānī, governor of Lāsh under Timūr Shāh Sadūzai 285
- Muḥammad Zamān Khān Qājār ‘Izz al-Dīnlū, governor of Astarābād (1814) 255
- Muḥammad Zamān Mīrzā b. Badī‘ al-Zamān, Timurid prince 57
- Muḥammadābād 206
- Muḥammadzai Durrānī(s) 127, 131, 143–144, 150, 181, 185, 201, 221–222, 231, 233–235, 241, 247, 286, 288
- Muḥammira (Khurramshahr) 234
- muḥavvaṭa* 135
- Muḥsinābād 175
- Mu‘īn al-Daula, see Aḥmad Mīrzā Mu‘īn al-Daula b. ‘Abbās Mīrzā Nā‘ib al-Saltāna (b. ca 1234/1818–19)
- Mu‘īn al-Dīn Jāmī, Khvāja (d. 783/1381–82) 38
- Mu‘īn al-Mulk Mīr Mannū, governor of Lahore (d. 1167/1753) 111–112
- Mu‘izz al-Dīn Ḥusain b. Ghiyāth al-Dīn, Kartid ruler (r. 732–772/1331–1370) 17, 19, 22
- mujtahid* 159
- Mukhlīṣ Khān Fūfalzā‘ī Durrānī, *sardār* of Turkistān (1750–1751/52) 114
- mulberry, see also *tūt* 36, 135, 137, 185, 257
- mule 37, 92, 113, 139, 282
- mulk* 43, 67, 93, 123, 158, 165, 196, 198–200, 227, 240, 291, 298
- Mulk Ārā, see Kayūmarth Mīrzā Īlkhānī Mulk Ārā Abvāb al-Mulk
- Mulk Ārā, see Muḥammad Qulī Khān Mulk Ārā Qājār
- Multān 4, 70, 74–82, 86, 88–90, 101–102, 111, 113, 116, 128–129, 298
- mulūk al-ṭavāyif* 195
- munshī*, *munshībāshī* 108, 132, 136, 147
- muqātila* 22
- Murād Khān Salor 265
- Murād Sardār Teke 261
- Murghāb 15, 30, **33–34**, 60, 71, 146, 173, 177, 267, 297
- Murghāb river (Rūd-i Shahd) 7, 26, 30, 33, 35, 64, 88, 99, 115, 117, 152, 169, 172, 177, 179–180, 188, 191, 193–194, 221, 244, 251, 265–266, 270, 273–276, 279
- murshid* 55, 134, 157, 218
- Murshidābād 47, 103
- Murtaẓā Qulī b. Miḥrāb Qājār, Safavid governor of Marv (1051–1052/1641–1642) 268
- Mūsā Gilānī, Mīrzā, *vazīr* of Mashhad under Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Shujā‘ al-Saltāna (1816–1827) and Aḥmad ‘Alī Mīrzā (1830–1831) 222–223, 263
- Mūsā Khān Ishāqzai 106
- Mūsā Khān, Ḥājji Mīrzā, brother of Mīrzā Abū al-Qāsim Farāhānī Qā‘im Maqām, *mutavallībāshī* at shrine of Imām Rīzā (d. 1262/1846) 228
- Muṣallā 20, 27, 181, 184–186
- mushāvīrat* 106
- Mushīr al-Daula, see Ḥusain Khān Mushīr al-Daula (d. 1881)
- mushkān* apples 31
- Muṣṭafā Qulī Khan ‘Arab Mīshmast, governor of Turshīz (?–1809, 1830) 215
- Mu‘tamad al-Daula, see ‘Abd al-Vahhāb Mu‘tamad al-Daula (1759–1829)
- Mu‘tamad al-Daula, see Raḥmatullāh b. Faṭḥullāh Khān Sadūzai Kāmran̄khēl Mu‘tamad al-Daula Vafādār Khān, Vazīr-i A‘ẓam of Shāh Zamān Sadūzai
- mutavallī*, *mutavallībāshī* 102, 185, 209, 217, 228–230, 236
- Muẓaffār al-Dīn b. Naṣrullāh, Manghīt ruler (r. 1860–1885) 12
- Muẓaffār Ṣafdar Jang b. Shujā‘ Sadūzai, governor of Multān under Shah Zamān 82
- Muzdūrān 92
- Nād ‘Alī 282, 289–290
- Nadhr Muḥammad Khān b. Dīn Muḥammad, Tuqai-Timurid ruler of Balkh (r. 1015–1051/1606–1642, 1055–1061/1645–1651) 50, 60
- Nādir b. Kāmran̄ Sadūzai 160
- Nādir b. Shāh Rukh Afshār (d. 1804) 125–127, 130, 216–217, 271
- Nādir Shāh Afshār (r. 1148–1160/1736–1747) 4–5, 10–12, 29, 33, 47–48, 54–55, 65–66, 78, **84–100**, 101–105, 107, 109, 111, 114–115, 119–124, 126, 137, 139, 148, 153–154, 172, 176, 180, 189, 195–196, 199–201, 206–207, 211, 213–214, 216–217, 253–254, 256, 259, 269–271, 281, 284–286, 290, 296
- Nādirābād 93, 106, 108
- Nafas Bēg (Nepes Bek) Toqtamīsh Teke 261, 263
- nā‘ib*, *nuvvāb* 81, 91, 101, 112, 125, 131, 218, 222, 270
- Nā‘ib al-Saltāna, see ‘Abbās Mīrzā Nā‘ib al-Saltāna (d. 1833)
- Najaf 11, 147, 228

- Najaf Khān, Mīrzā, *vazīr* of Yār Muḥammad and Sa'īd Muḥammad Khān Alakūzai 162–163
- Najaf Qulī Īlkhānī b. Ibrāhīm Shādillū, contemporary of Fath 'Alī Shāh 206, 212, 219, 225, 263, 281
- Najaf Qulī Shāmlū 56
- Najm al-Dīn Kubrā (d. 1221) 37
- Najm-i Thānī, Safavid general (d. 918/1512) 45
- Nakhjivān 225
- na'l bahā* 61, 111–112
- Naqd 'Alī Khān Za'farānlū 125, 211
- Naqshbandīya 31, 37, 155, 158, 160, 218, 256, 273–274
- Naratū (Neretū, Nārātū) 30, 32–33, 73, 172, 295
- Nardīn 231
- Nasā 52, 92, 141, 195, 243, 259, 268
- nāshpātī* pear, *pyrus communis* 36–37
- Nāshir al-Dīn Bēg b. Shāh Murād Bī Manghīt, governor of Marv (1791–1808) 272
- Nāshir al-Dīn Shāh b. Muḥammad, Qājār ruler (r. 1848–1896) 6, 133, 143–144, 146–148, 162–164, 166–167, 194, 208, 210, 212–214, 216, 229–230, 233–237, 239, 245, 247, 256–257, 264–265, 280, 288–289, 291
- Nāshir al-Mulk, see Maḥmūd Khān Qarāguzlū Nāshir al-Mulk
- Našīr b. Muḥammad Shāh Hazāra 221
- Našīr Khān Balūch 112, 118
- Nāshir Khān Qājār Quyūnlū, governor of Astarābād (1257/1841–42) 256
- Naşr b. Aḥmad, Samanid ruler (r. 301–331/913–943) 8
- Naşrullāh b. Ḥaidar Tūra, Manghīt ruler (r. 1242–1277/1827–1860) 12, 273–274
- Naşrullāh b. Qīlich Tīmūrī 133
- Naşrullāh Khān Nūrzai 106
- Naşrullāh Mīrzā I b. Nādir Shāh Afshār (d. 1747) 90–91, 271
- Naşrullāh Mīrzā II Valī Ni'mat b. Shāh Rukh Afshār (d. 1786) 118, 125–127
- naukar* (*nökär*) 164
- Naurūz 'Alī Jamshīdī, governor of Kurukh 73
- Navvāb Khān Alakūzai, *sardār* of Turkistān 114
- nāyib al-ḥukūma* 257
- nāzhū*, pine tree 39
- Nikūdar (Negüder) 71
- Nikūdarī(s) (Negüderi) 34, 36, 70–72, 158
- Nīlāb (upper Indus) 75
- Nīmruz, see also Sīstān 285
- Nīshāpūr (Naishābūr) 7, 9, 16, 30, 40, 51–52, 55–57, 59, 63, 84, 92, 106, 109–111, 117, 120, 127, 129, 141, 170, 195, 197–199, 205, 207, 209, 217, 223–224, 229, 241, 249, 298
- Nīshīn 64
- Niyāz b. Faṭḥullāh Bēg Firūzkūhī 179
- Niyāz Muḥammad Bāy (d. 1843), Khivan chief of artillery 273
- Nizām al-Daula, see Muḥammad Nizām al-Daula Hazāra
- Nizām al-Daula, see Shīr Muḥammad Khān Hazāra Nizām al-Daula (d. between 1838–1842)
- Nizāmī 'Arūzī, Aḥmad b. 'Umar b. 'Alī Samarqandī (6th/12th century) 8, 32
- Novur canal 275
- Nukhūr 260
- Nūr al-Dīn Khān Bāmīzai, governor of Kashmīr (1762, 1765–1766, 1768–1769). 113
- Nūr Muḥammad Khān 'Alīzai (d. 1747), governor of Qandahār and supreme leader of Abdālīs under Nādir Shāh 92–93, 106
- Nūr Muḥammad Khān Durrānī Khavgānī, *sardār* of Mashhad (1754–ca. 1761) 125
- Nūr Muḥammad Khān Marvī 268
- Nūr Muḥammad Khān Qājār Develū, governor of Khabūshān, Nīshāpūr, Bām and parts of Jahān-Arghiyān (appointed in 1832) 224
- Nūr Muḥammad Shāh, Sayyid, Afghan Prime Minister 289
- Nūrvirdī Khān Toqtamīsh Teke 276
- Nūrzai Durrānī(s) 81, 169, 189, 286
- Nuṣratābād (present-day Zābul) 213, 289, 291
- Nuṣrat al-Mulk, see 'Alī Mardān Khān Tīmūrī Nuṣrat al-Mulk nuts 31, 35, 213
- Ögedei b. Chingiz, Great Khān of the Chingizids (r. 1229–1241) 69
- opium 76, 133, 172, 215
- Otamīsh (Āqtamish) Teke(s) 232, 260, 263–264, 275
- pādshāh*, *pādshāhān* 8
- panba*, see also cotton 36
- Pānīpat 45, 112
- Panjāb 9, 76–77, 111–112, 115–116, 118, 129–130, 152
- Panjdiḥ (present-day Takht-i Bāzār) 33, 51, 60, 71, 96, 146, 169, 172–174, 176, 178, 185–186, 188, 194, 251, 264–266, 272, 275, 277, 279
- Parvāna 26–27
- Parvāna-Havādashtak 25, 27, 184
- Parvīz b. Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai 116
- pashm-i kupankī* 40
- Pāshtān 26, 31
- Pashtūn(s) 74, 81–82, 99, 104, 112–113, 146, 167, 169, 180, 284, 297, 299–300
- Pasrūr 111, 117
- Pātāb (Patāb) 108
- Pāyanda Muḥammad b. Ḥājī Jamāl Muḥammadzai Bārakzai, Sarfarāz Khān, Amīr al-Umarā (d. ca. 1800) 127, 129, 130
- peaches, see also *shaftālū* 36, 245
- pears, see also *amrūd* 35–37

- Peshawar (Pishāvar) 70, 77, 90, 103–104, 112–113, 116, 128, 130–131, 143, 150, 195, 299
- Petro-Alexandrovsk 65
- Pīr Muḥammad Khān Marvī (d. 1738) 90–91
- Pīrān Khān, Afsharid *bēglerbēgī* of Herat (1741–42) 91
- Pishīn 52, 76, 78–79, 86, 297
- pīshkash* 180, 222, 225
- pista*, see also pistachios 32, 188
- pistachios, see also *pista* 32, 35, 40, 172, 188
- pomegranates, see also *anār* 35–36, 175, 258
- Porsu Qal'a 273–274
- Pottinger, Eldred (1811–1843) 226
- Pul-i Abrīshum 115
- Pul-i Kārtabār 20
- Pul-i Khātūn 64, 132, 178, 194, 247, 262
- Pul-i Mālān 23–24, 28, 64, 68, 181–182, 184
- Pul-i Nuqra 219
- Pul-i Sālār 64, 268
- Pul-i Tābān 33, 266
- Pul-i Tūlakī (Pul-i Bābā Kamāl) 26
- Pūpalzai Durrānī(s) 106, 108, 113, 128, 140, 144, 163, 169, 197
- Purdil b. Pāyanda Muḥammad Mūḥammadzai, Qandahār Sardār (1785–1830) 143, 145
- Pusht-i Kūh 116, 180, 223
- qabīla*, *qabāyil* 208
- Qādis 169, 179
- Qaiṣar b. Shāh Zamān Sadūzai 116, 129–132
- Qājār(s) 55–56, 101, 136, 199, 206–207, 212, 224, 244, 253–255, 268–271, 273, 281
- qalamrau* 55, 298
- Qalandarābād 239
- Qalāt-i Balūch 52, 115
- Qalāt-i Ghilzai 52, 129, 145, 192
- Qal'a-yi Ikhtiyār al-Dīn **20–21**, 41, 58, 110, 120, 131–132, 183, 231
- Qal'a-yi Mūr 178
- Qal'a-yi Nau 119–120, 140, 169–172, 174–175, 179, 188, 191, 221
- qanāt* 36, 190, 213
- Qanbar 'Alī Khān, Qājār envoy to Qandahār 194
- Qandahār 3–4, 10, 12, 17, 23, 28, 30, 34–35, 39, 45, 47, 48–49, 51, 54, 58–60, 63–64, 67–68, 70–82, 84–89, 91–94, 97–98, 100–102, 104–106, **107–108**, 110–111, 115–118, 120, 122, 125–127, 129–130, 132, 137, 143–146, 150–152, 154, 158, 163–164, 166–167, 174, 177, 180–182, 184, 189–192, 194–196, 198–200, 207, 218–219, 222, 227, 231, 233, 253–254, 282–288, 291, 294, 297–301
- Qandahār Gate 154, 183
- Qarā Bayāt(s) 119, 207
- Qara Buqa 178
- Qara Qal'a (Qārī Qal'a) 235, 256–257
- Qarā Qalpāq(s) 65, 246
- Qara Qum 29, 67, 151, 207, 243–245, 248, 251–252, 259, 262, 266, 277, 279–280
- Qarā Quyūnlū(s) 10, 50, 98
- Qarā Tātār(s) 119
- Qara Tepe 176, 265
- Qarābāgh 253
- Qarāchlū(s) 92
- Qarāchūrlū Kurd(s) 207
- Qarādāghlī(s) 92
- Qaradashlī Turkmen(s) 259
- Qarā'ī(s) 119, 125, 127, 187, 195, 205, 208, 210, **214–216**, 218–219, 221–224, 236, 249, 265
- Qarāmānlū Qizilbāsh 55
- Qarā'unās 71
- qarāvul*, *qarāvulān* 164, 266
- Qarayāb (Qarīyab) 242, 264–266, 274–275, 277
- Qārī Band, irrigation system in Sarakhs 262
- Qarshī (Nakhshab) 67, 115, 206
- qarya*, *qurā* 16, 138
- qaşaba*, *qaşabajāt* 31, 38, 40, 94
- Qaşdār 198
- Qāsim 'Alī Khān Jalāyir, Afsharid governor of Kalāt-i Nādirī 90
- Qaşūr 77, 82
- Qaṭaghan 11, 114
- qaum*, *aqvām* 70, 87, 119, 154, 195, 211, 244
- Qaushīd (Qoushut) Khān Toqtamīsh Teke (d. 1878) 263–267, 274–276, 280
- Qaushīd Khān Qal'a 267, 275, 277–279
- Qāyīn, Qāyīnāt 5, 30, 51, 56–57, 87, 89, 102, 109, 122, 125, 130, 141, 159, 162, 164, 169, 170, 193, 195, 205–206, 208, 211, 213, 216, 229, 233, 235, 249, 271, 281, 283, 285, 287–289, 291
- Qazāq Khān, governor of Astarābād (1636–1639) 252
- Qazāq Sulṭān b. Muḥammad Sharaf al-Dīn Tekelū 53, 57, 64
- Qazāq(s) 61, 246, 250
- qāzī*, *quzāt* 157, 165, 276
- Qazvīn 19, 41, 46, 48, 50–51, 58, 62, 238, 284, 294
- Qilich b. Hājī Khān Tīmūrī (d. 1237/1822) 118, 130–133, 140, 171, 187, 205, 221–222
- Qilīchī(s) 92
- Qipchāq Gate 20, 23, 183
- Qipchāq(s) 52, 72–73, 92, 97, 114, 119, 180
- Qirqlū (Qirkhlū) Afshār(s) 86, 207–208
- qishlāq* 64, 81, 128, 211, 295
- Qivām al-Daula, see Muḥammad Āshtiyānī Qivām al-Daula

- Qizil Arvāt 243, 251, 259
 Qizil Qum 245
 Qizilbāsh 46, 50, 53, 55–57, 59–61, 64, 68, 81, 83, 86–87, 91, 97, 101, 105, 113–114, 118, 120, 130, 132, 140, 153–157, 161, 165, 168, 206, 268–269, 271, 283, 297
 Quhandiz 21, 23
 Quhistān 17, 30, 40, 71, 117
qulba 108
qullarāqāsī 119, 192, 253
 Qum 124, 238, 259
 Qūmis 115
 Qunduz 114–115, 158
 Qunghrāt Uzbek(s) 12, 246–247, 274
 Qurbān Qilīch Khān, Yomut leader 255
qurchī 55
qurchībāshī, commander of the royal guard 55
 Qutaiba b. Muslim (d. 715), conqueror of Samarqand 7
 Quṭb al-Dīn Ḥaidar (d. ca. 613/1216–17) 40
quṭb, *aqṭāb* 19, 183
 Quṭb Shāh, see Sulṭān Qulī Quṭb Shāh, ruler of Golkonda (r. 1580–1612)
 Qutlugh Khvāja, Chaghatai leader 71
 Quyūnlū Qājār(s) 253–256
- rabaṣ* 21
 Rādkān 63, 124, 208, 219–220, 223
rāfiṣ, *rāfiṣiyan* 157, 165
 Raḥīm Khān Develū, governor of Astarābād (1782–) 254
 Raḥīm Qulī b. Muḥammad Raḥīm, Qunghrāt ruler of Khīva (1842–1846) 176
 Raḥmatullāh b. Faṭḥullāh Sadūzai Kāmrānkhēl Muʿtamad al-Daula Vafādār Khān, *vazīr-i aʿzam* of Shāh Zamān Sadūzai 130, 197–198
raiḥān, *rayāḥīn* 39
 railway 65, 261
 raisins (*kishmish*, *mavīz*). 8, 39
raʿīyat, *raʿāyā* 43, 57–58, 69, 72, 107, 167–168
 Rajab Marvī 229
 Ranjit Singh, Sikh ruler (1780–1839) 116, 130
rauṣa 16, 108
 Rauṣa Bāgh 131
 Ray 3, 9, 63
 Rāz 92, 241
 Ribāṭ-i Pay 39
 rice, see also *shālī* 33, 138, 180, 245, 257–258, 282
 Riza 37
 Rizā Qulī ʿAbbās Qulī b. Bēgler Khān Chāpushlū (d. 1853) 206, 230–232, 264, 274
 Rizā Qulī Īlkhānī b. Amīr Gūna Zaʿfarānlū, (d. 1833) 206, 215, 219–220, 223–224, 229, 231, 261, 263
- Rizā Qulī Mīrzā, eldest son of Nādir Shāh Afshār (1719–1747) 48, 90–91, 253
rub ʿ*i maskūn* 2, 60, 84
 Rūdakī, Abū ʿAbdullāh Jaʿfar (d. 940–41) 8
 Rūdbār (on the Hilmand river) 282–283, 286
 Rūdbār (south of Kirmān) 71
 Rūd-i Pāshtān 25–27
 Rūd-i Sīstān 290
 Ruhtās (Rohtas) Fort 112
 Rukn al-Daula, see Muḥammad Taqī Mīrzā Rukn al-Daula (ca. 1846–1900/01)
 Rukn al-Dīn, ruler of Ghūr, maternal grandfather of Shams al-Dīn (d. 643/1245–46) 34
 Rūmlū Qizilbāsh 55
 Rustam Muḥammad b. Valī Muḥammad, Tuqai-Timurid prince 50
 Rūzanak 191
- Saʿadat Qulī Khān Baghāyirlū, governor of Jahān-Arghiyān 219
 Šābir Shāh (Darvīsh Šābir) 105–106
 Sabqar (Sabaqar) 25–27, 190
 Sabūl 137
 Sabzavār 49, 51–52, 56, 63, 92, 110, 115, 125, 141, 159, 195, 197–199, 205, 209, 217, 223–224, 229–230, 239, 249, 253, 268
 Saʿd al-Dīn Khān Vakīl al-Daula, governor of Herat (1887–1904) 193
 Saʿdānlū Kurd(s) 207, 211
šadr, *šudūr* 52, 83
 Šadr al-Mamālik, see Muḥammad ʿAlī Šadr al-Mamālik
 Šadrpūr 82
 Sadū, Asadullāh, (1558–1627), progenitor of the Sadūzais 75, 79–80, 141
 Sadūzai Durrānī(s) 12, 75–77, 79–82, 84, 87–90, 101, 103–107, 115, 117, 126, 128, 130–131, 139–140, 144, 149–150, 153–154, 158, 174, 179, 187, 189, 191, 197, 200, 213–214, 218–222, 224, 226, 233, 240, 254, 271–272, 286, 297–299
 saffron 88, 213
 Šāfi 116
 Šāfi b. Muḥammad Bāqir, Safavid ruler (r. 1038–1052/1629–1642) 47, 59–60, 62, 79–80, 135
 Šāfi Qulī Khān Turkistān Ughlī 87, 94
 Safid Kūh 29, 266
šāhib qirān 134
šāhibī grape 36
šāhib-i ikhtiyār 90, 93, 285
šahn 54, 208
šahrā nishīn 73, 81, 168

- Sa'īd Muḥammad b. Yār Muḥammad Alakūzai, ruler of Herat (r. 1851–1855) 144, 162–163, 171, 174, 231, 233
- Ṣaid Muḥammad, Mullā 167
- Saidāl Khān Nāṣirī Ghilzai 89, 97
- Saif al-Dīn Bākharzī (d. 659/1261) 37
- Saif al-Mulk, see Vajīhullāh Mīrzā Saif al-Mulk
- Saif al-Mulūk b. Kāmran Sadūzai 191
- Saif al-Mulūk, Timurid governor of Gharjīstān (displaced by the Safavid army in 1519) 57
- Sainān 23
- Ṣā'inkhānī Yomut(s) 254
- Sākhar 181, 192
- Sākhar-Tūlak 30, 34, **36**, 43, 72
- Saljūq(s) 9, 28, 35, 37, 66, 70, 84, 295
- Salor Turkmen(s) 193, 215, 247, 259, 262–265, 272–275, 278
- Salt Range 70
- Sām Īlkhānī Shujā' al-Daula b. Rizā Qulī Za'farānlū (d. 1275/1858–59) 229, 231, 233–234
- Samarqand 7–8, 10, 15, 21–22, 45, 62, 66–67, 69, 99, 139, 152, 249–250
- Sāmarrā' 228
- Sangān (Ghūr) 181
- Sangān (Zāva-Maḥvilāt) 224
- Sangān-i Khvāf 89
- Sanjar b. Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai 110
- Sanjarānī Balūch 286, 288
- Saq Salmān 26, 63–64
- sar galla* 137
- sar shumār* 132, 139
- sar vilāyat* 224
- Sarakhs 26, 29–30, 49, 52, 56, 64, 70–71, 84, 92, 95–96, 133, 141, 150, 152, 162, 177, 195, 210, 216, 224, 228–233, 239, 241–243, 245–249, 251, 255–257, 259–260, **262–266**, 267, 273–277, 279–281, 300
- Sarbandī(s) 191, 286–288, 291
- sardār*, *sardārān* 75, 90, 93, 105–106, 109, 112–114, 116, 118–120, 122, 125, 128, 143, 145–146, 165–166, 177, 179–180, 191–192, 199, 214, 264, 279, 287, 291
- sardsīr* 30
- Sarfārāz Khān, see Pāyanda Khān Muḥammadzai Bārakzai (d. ca 1800)
- sarḥadd*, *sarḥaddāt* 18, 51–52, 65, 67, 88, 90, 114–115, 117, 202, 231, 241, 270, 294
- sarḥadd-dār* 292
- Sārī 253
- Sar-i Jām 178, 222, 224, 233
- Sar-i Pul 117, 152, 249
- Sariq Turkmen(s) 193, 247, 260, 262, 264–265, 272–277, 279
- sarkarda* 259
- sarkhēl*, *sarkhēlān* 72, 79, 87, 163
- sarkishikchībāshī* 277
- Sarvānlū Afshār(s) 208
- Sāva 63
- sayyid* 159–161, 217
- Sayyid Muḥammad Khān, Qunghrāt ruler of Khīva (r. 1856–1864) 280
- sesame 33
- Shāda 135, 155, 158, 218
- Shādillū Kurd(s) 206–207, 209–210, **212–213**, 223, 228–229, 231, 235, 237, 248, 250, 256–257, 260, 281
- Shāfilān (Shāhfilān) 17, **36**, 50, 52, 81, 88, 174, 180, 190
- shaftālū*, see also peaches 36
- Shāh 'Ālam II b. 'Ālamgīr, Mughal ruler (r. 1173–1221/1759–1806) 12
- Shāh Bēg Khān Fūfālzai, *sardār* of Herat 120
- Shāh Ḥusain Vafādār Khān b. Maudūd Sadūzai 76, 80, 82
- Shāh Jahān b. Jahāngīr, Mughal emperor (r. 1037–1068/1628–1658) 49, 54, 76, 80–81
- Shāh Jūy (Jūy-i Kārtabār) 23, 25, 64
- Shāh Karam Sulṭān Tāymanī 180
- Shāh Murād b. Dāniyāl Bī (Amīr-i Ma'sūm), Manghīt ruler (r. 1785–1800) 12, 115, 130, 155–156, 196, 271–272
- Shāh Navāz b. Sulṭān Aḥmad Muḥammadzai, ruler of Herat (March–May 1863) 144, 166
- Shāh Navāz b. Zakariyā, Mughal governor of Lahore 105
- Shāh Pasand Khān Darzai Firūzkūhī 173
- Shāh Pasand Khān Ishāqzai Durrānī 120
- Shāh Qulī Bēg b. Muḥammad 'Alī Bēg Qājār 'Izz al-Dīnlū, governor of Marv (1741–ca. 1747) 270–271
- Shāh Qulī Sulṭān Chāvushlū Ustājilū 53
- Shāh Qulī Sulṭān Za'farānlū, *amīr al-umarā* under Shāh 'Abbās I 207
- Shāh Rukh b. Rizā Qulī Mīrzā Afshār (r. 1161–1210/1748–1796) 12, 91, 99, 102–103, 109–110, 117–119, 121–126, 130, 137, 139, 199, 211, 216, 254, 271, 285
- Shāh Rukh b. Tīmūr, Timurid ruler (r. 811–850/1409–1447) 10, 15–16, 18, 20–22, 24, 27–28, 31–32, 41, 53, 62, 79, 172, 185, 267
- Shāh Valī Khān Bāmīzai Ashraf al-Vuzārā, *vazīr* of Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai (d. 1772) 115, 120, 127
- Shahrak 180–181
- Shahrakī(s) 191, 285–287
- shahrbandī* 22
- Shahrbanū Bēgum bt. Shāh Sulaimān Ṣafavī 121
- Shahr-i Nau 128, 133, 174–175, 222
- Shahr-i Sabz (Kish) 22–23, 62, 67, 172, 271
- Shahr-i Ṣafā 79–82, 86
- shahristān* 21
- Shahriyār 92
- Shahriyārī 136

- Shāhrūd 116, 141, 217, 249
 Shāhseven 85, 164, 207, 236
shaikh 37, 40, 42–43, 104, 158, 160, 165, 255, 273–274
shākh shumārī 137
 Shakībān 39, 135, 155, 192, 279
 Shāl (present-day Quetta) 34, 52, 72
shālī, see also rice 138
 Sham‘ān 25
 Shamlū Qizilbāsh 50–51, 53, 55–57, 59, 68, 72, 83, 92–93, 119, 164, 180
 Shams al-Dīn Khān, governor of Farāh and Anār Darra 190
 Shams al-Dīn, founder of the Kart dynasty (r. 643–675/1245–1276) 34, 297
 Shāpūr I, Sasanian ruler (r. 240–270) 7
 Shaqāqī Kurd(s) 207
shaqāyiq, poppy 39
 Shaukat al-Daula, see Mīr Asadullāh Khān Tīmūrī Shaukat al-Daula
 Shaukat al-Mulk, see Ismā‘īl II Shaukat al-Mulk Khuzaima
 sheep 24, 33, 35, 39, 41, 61, 71, 92, 135, 137, 172, 213, 232, 265
 Sheil, Sir Justin (1803–1871), British envoy to Iran (1844–1853) 150, 232
 Shī‘a 11, 48, 59, 76, 85, 124, 130, 132, 143, 146, 148, 153–156, 159–168, 185, 228, 249, 263, 272
 Shibarghān (Shabūrgān) 57, 71, 114–115, 117, 160, 195, 199, 249, 297
 Shihāb al-Dīn (later Mu‘izz al-Dīn) Muḥammad, Ghurid sultan of Ghazna (r. 1173–1206) 76
 Shihāb al-Mulk, see Ḥusain Khān Shāhseven Shihāb al-Mulk (d. 1875)
 Shikārpūr 116, 298
 Shīr ‘Alī b. Dūst Muḥammad Khān, Muḥammadzai ruler (r. 1863–1866, 1869–1878) 144–146, 150, 177, 179, 181, 192, 235, 288–291
 Shīr ‘Alī b. Mīhrdīl Muḥammadzai 191
shīr ḥājī 287
 Shīr Khān b. Ḥasan b. ‘Abd al-Qādir Tarīnī, governor of Pishīn 79–80
 Shīr Khān b. Khvāja Khizr Sadūzai 80
 Shīr Khān Sūr 58
 Shīr Muḥammad b. Mizrāb Mīng, Mīr of Maimana (r. 1845–1847) 170
 Shīr Muḥammad b. Najaf Qulī Shādillū 212
 Shīr Muḥammad Nizām al-Daula b. Iskandar Hazāra (d. between 1838–1842) 169–171, 173, 191, 249
 Shīrāz 12, 15, 21, 62, 77, 101, 103, 117, 125, 127, 149, 254, 281, 286
 Shīrdīl b. Pāyanda Muḥammad Mūḥammadzai, Qandahār Sardār (1786–1826) 143
 Shīrdīl Khān Ishīk Āqāsī Bārakzai, governor of Herat (d. 1878) 146, 192
 Shīr-i Shutur 271
 Shīrīn Bēg b. Dilāvar Tāymanī 97
 Shīrvān 92, 206–207
 Shujā‘ al-Daula, see Amīr Ḥusain Īlkhānī Shujā‘ al-Daula Za‘farānlū (d. 1893)
 Shujā‘ al-Dīn Dhū al-Nūn Arghūn, governor of Ghūr and Zamīndāvar (appointed in 1480) 34, 72
 Shujā‘ al-Saltāna, see Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Shujā‘ al-Saltāna (1789–1853/54)
 Shujā‘ b. Tīmūr Shāh, Sadūzai ruler (r. 1803–1809, 1839–1842) 116, 130–131, 148–150, 299
 Shujā‘ b. Zāhid Sadūzai, governor of Multān under Tīmūr Shāh 82
 Shujā‘ ābād 82
 Shūra Kāl 277
sīb, see also apples 35–36
 Sībī 34, 72, 75, 116, 282
 Sīdī ‘Alī Ra‘īs, Turkish Admiral 67
 Sihām al-Daula, see Ḥaidar Qulī Sihām al-Daula Shādillū, (d. 1288/1871–72)
 Sihām al-Daula, see Yār Muḥammad Sihām al-Daula Shādillū (d. 1322/1904–5)
 Sikh(s) 112, 116, 128–129, 143, 151
sikka 85, 98, 166, 200, 219–220, 224–225, 239
 Sikūha 286–289
 silk 8, 36, 40, 77, 94, 127, 133, 213, 215
 silver 54, 78, 94, 126, 163, 209, 230, 258, 266–267
 Simalqān 207
 Simnān 3, 51, 61, 89, 92, 141, 195, 217, 257, 294
 Simonich, Ivan Osipovich, Russian envoy to Iran (1833–1838) 159, 227
 Sind 9, 58, 65, 75–77, 101, 116, 128, 147, 152, 198, 297–298
sipahsālār 90, 114, 128, 132, 235
siqāya 134
 Sīr Daryā (Jaxartes, Saiḥūn) 7, 9, 45, 65, 152, 245, 250
 Sirhind 101, 111–113, 116, 129
 Sīstān (Sijistān, Nīmruz) 3–6, 8, 15, 30, 51, 71, 73, 88, 90, 96, 149, 172, 176, 191, 193, 195–196, 198, 202, 213–214, 216–217, 235–236, 240, 243, 269, **281–290**, 291, 296–297, 301
 Siyāh Kūh 30
 Siyālkōt 81, 111–112, 117
siyāsāt 81
 Siyāvushān 28, 169
 slaves 56, 61–62, 138–139, 159, 161, 169–170, 191, 215, 246–251, 254, 262–264, 274, 276
 Sogdia 7, 66
suffa 19

- Şūfī Islām, Naqshbandī *pīr* (d. 1222/1807) 30, 31, **155–159**, 160, 218, 273
- Şūfiyān 64
- Şūfiyān Khalīfa Rūmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1535–1536) 51, 57
- Suhrāb Bī, Qaṭaghan leader of Qunduz (d. 1756) 114
- Suhrāb Khān Ghulām Pīshkhidmatbāshī, governor of Turbat-i Ḥaidariya, Kadkan, Maḥvilāt and Sar-i Jām (appointed in 1832) 222, 224
- Sukhtiyap, see also Alasha Canal 275
- Sulaimān II, see Mīr Sayyid Muḥammad (d. 1163/1750)
- Sulaimān b. ‘Abbās II, Safavid ruler (Şaffī II, r. 1077–1105/1666–1694) 47, 62, 81, 135
- Sulaimān b. Aḥmad Shāh Sadūzai 116, 118, 126–127, 285
- Sulaimān b. Ḥusain, Kayanid governor of Sīstān (1748–1772, 1776–1781/82) 285
- Sulṭān Aḥmad b. Muḥammad ‘Azīm Muḥammadzai, ruler of Herat (1857–1863) 144, 152, 166, 177, 181, 192–193, 234
- Sulṭān ‘Alī b. Kuhandil Muḥammadzai, Qandahār Sardār 291
- Sulṭān Ḥusain b. Sulaimān, Safavid ruler (r. 1105–1135/1694–1722) 47, 53, 74–75, 81, 85, 88, 109, 123, 207, 211, 269, 284
- Sulṭān Ḥusain Bāyqarā b. Maṣṣūr, Timurid ruler (r. 873–911/1469–1506) 11, 16–17, 20–21, 26–28, 31–32, 34, 36, 43, 45, 62, 65, 72, 134, 183
- Sulṭān Ḥusain Jalāl al-Daula b. Nāṣir al-Dīn Shāh Qājār (1269–1285/1852–1868), governor of Mashhad (1864–1868) 235
- Sulṭān Maidān 63
- Sulṭān Mas‘ūd Mīrzā Yamīn al-Daula (Zill al-Sulṭān) b. Nāṣir al-Dīn Shāh Qājār (1850–1918) 257
- Sulṭān Muḥammad b. ‘Aṭā Muḥammad Tāymanī 181
- Sulṭān Murād Mīrzā b. Ṭahmāsp I (d. 952/1545) 49
- Sulṭān Murād Mīrzā Ḥusām al-Saltāna b. ‘Abbās Mīrzā (1233–1300/1818–1883), governor of Mashhad (1850–1853, 1855–1858, 1861–1863, 1871–1872) 133, 162–165, 171, 174–175, 178, 229, **230–234**, 235–236, 239–241, 249, 256, 260, 264–265, 274, 280, 287
- Sulṭān Qulī Quṭb Shāh, ruler of Golkonda (r. 1580–1612) 54
- Sulṭān Shāh, *vālī* of Badakhshān 115
- Sulṭānīya 238, 294
- Sumbar river (Chāt) 251, 256
- Sunnī 11, 43, 59, 76, 119, 130, 132–133, 140, 143, 150, 153–155, 159–165, 167–169, 172–175, 178, 185, 218, 249, 271
- sunūr* 196
- Surat 77–78
- Surkh Kamān(s) 119
- Surkhāb river 114
- Surūdīya 155
- Sutlej (Satlij) 77
- suyūrghāl* 64, 135, 137
- Ṭabas (Ṭabas Gilakī) 30, 49, 51–52, 56, 62–63, 84, 115, 117, 127–128, 130, 141, 170, 195, 199, 205–206, 208, 213–214, 233, 249, 284, 291
- Ṭabas Masīnā 30, 141, 214
- Tabrīz 9, 10, 15, 50, 62, 93, 98–99, 109, 152, 209, 224–225, 238, 269
- Tagāu ‘Alam 179
- Tagāu Ishlān 180–181
- Taghārī 26
- Ṭāhirī(s) 72–73, 119
- Ṭahmāsp I b. Ismā‘īl, Safavid ruler (r. 930–984/1524–1576) 11, 19, 41, 46–47, 49–51, 53, 58, 63, 79, 209, 240, 268, 283
- Ṭahmāsp II b. Sulṭān Ḥusain, Safavid ruler (r. 1142–1145/1730–1732, d. 1739) 86, 90–91, 123, 253, 284
- Ṭahmāsp Khān Jalāyir Vakīl al-Daula (d. 1747) 90–91, 96–97, 123
- Ṭahmāsp Qulī, see also Nādir Shāh Afshār 86, 253, 284
- Taivāra 34, 169, 180–181, 192
- Tāj Muḥammad b. Muḥammad Rizā Sarbandī 288
- Tāj-i Salmānī, early Timurid author 18
- Tājīk(s), Tāzīk(s) 69, 122, 124, 169, 246, 268
- Takht-i Khātūn 73
- Takht-i Malik 33
- takya* 168
- Ṭāliqān 71, 114
- Tālīsh Qizilbāsh 56
- Tall-i Bangiyān 21, 186
- Tarakī Ghilzai(s) 297
- Tarklanrī Pashtūn(s) 104
- Tarnak river 79, 93, 108
- Tashkent (Tāshkand) 45, 47, 67, 250
- Tātār(s) 48, 77, 110, 119, 129, 269, 284, 298
- Tāybād 37–38, 175, 193
- ṭāyifa*, *ṭavāyif* 70, 79, 154, 168, 200, 205, 208, 244, 248
- ṭāyifī* grapes 31
- Tāymanī(s) 92–93, 96–97, 118–119, 124, 129, 158, 160–161, 169, 171–172, 174, 177, **180–181**, 191–192, 232, 249
- ta‘zīya* 165, 168
- Tehran (Ṭīhrān) 37, 92, 115, 132, 141, 144, 150, 152, 156, 163, 166, 172, 199, 208–209, 215–217, 219–220, 223–225, 227–230, 232–240, 243, 247, 251, 254–255, 259, 264, 274, 280–281, 288–289, 291, 301
- Tejend 84, 212, 242–243, 245, 251, 261–266, 277, 281, 301
- Teke Khān Salor 266
- Teke Turkmen(s) 151, 170, 193, 212, 225, 231–232, 235, 246–247, 249–251, 256, 259–267, 272–276, 278–281
- Tekelū Qizilbāsh 51, 53, 55, 58, 83
- telegraph 238, 266
- thaghr*, *thughūr* 35, 196, 232
- Ṭhaṭṭa 76

- Tigīnābād (the region of Qandahār) 282, 297
 Tigris 65, 194
tīm 24
 Tīmūr Shāh b. Aḥmad, Sadūzai ruler (r. 1772–1793) 5, 108–110, 112–113, 115–118, 120, 127–130, 132, 138–139, 154–155, 175, 179, 191, 214, 271–272, 285, 297–298
 Tīmūr, founder of the Timurid dynasty (r. 771–807/1370–1405) 10, 15, 18, 22–24, 33, 38–39, 45, 66–67, 72, 74, 98–99, 134, 172, 178, 181, 208, 240, 286
 Tīmūrī(s) 72, 73, 118–119, 130–133, 140, 157, 169–171, 187, 189, 205, 210, 216, 221–223, 249, 279
 Tīr Pul 26
 Tīrāh 297
 Tirmidh 65–66
 tobacco 77, 133, 172, 180, 214–215
 Toluy b. Chingiz Khān (d. ca. 1240) 69
 Toqtamish Teke(s) 228, 230, 232, 260–265, 275–276
 Transcaspia 6, 239, 248
 Tughril Bēg, founder of the Saljūq dynasty (r. 429–455/1038–1063) 9
 Ṭukhāristān 7, 52, 240–241
 Ṭukhī Ghilzai(s) 80, 104
 Tūlak 180–181, 297
tūmān 71, 89, 111, 136, 138–139, 164, 166, 173, 191, 215, 219–220, 222, 225, 228, 230, 240, 276, 279, 289, 291
 Tūn (present-day Firdaus) 30, 49, 51–52, 110, 117, 128, 141, 195, 205–206, 213–214, 233, 284, 291
tūpchībāshī 110
 Turāb Bēg Otamish Teke 263
 Tūrān 6, 11, 67–68, 83–84, 155, 215, 297–298
 Tūrān-Tūniyān 25–26
 Turbat-i Ḥaidariya 51–52, 117–118, 139, 141, 164, 187, 195, 205, 207–208, 210, 214–215, 218, 220, 222–224, 227, 229, 232–233, 236, 241, 247, 249, 255, 264
 Turbat-i Shaikh Jām 30, 49, 51, 88, 98, 117–118, 128, 133, 139, 141, 175–176, 191, 206, 208, 212, 232–233, 268
 Tūr-i Shaikh 172
 Turk, Atrāk 7, 34, 60, 69–70, 121–122, 124, 156, 208, 261
 Turkistān 2, 5–6, 11–12, 29, 45, 62, 67, 77, 83, 93, 95–96, 99, 109, 113–115, 117, 128, 145, 147, 156, 192, 201, 270, 297–298, 300
 Turkmānchāy 225, 239, 291
 Turkmen(s) 5, 10–11, 55, 59, 71, 129, 132–133, 151, 156, 159, 161, 163, 169–171, 173, 178, 190, 194–195, 205, 207–208, 212–213, 215–216, 225, 228–232, 234–237, 240, 242, 244–260, 262–265, 267, 269–270, 272–281, 300
 Türkmenabat, see Chārjūy
 Ṭurra Bāz Khān Pūpalzai, Durrānī envoy to the court of Faṭḥ ‘Alī Shāh Qājār 197–198, 290
 Turshīz 49, 51–52, 63, 89, 109, 117–118, 131, 139, 141, 170, 195, 205–206, 208, 215, 220, 223, 229
 Ṭūs 51, 53, 57, 63, 141, 195, 198, 208
tūt, see also mulberry 36
tuyūl, *tuyūlāt* 56, 64, 93, 137–138, 164, 179, 190
 ‘Ubaid Khān, Khvāja (d. 1764), governor of Lahore (1755, 1756, 1761) 112
 ‘Ubaidullāh b. Maḥmūd, Abu al-Khairid ruler (r. 940–946/1533–1540) 10, 46, 53, 57, 59, 62, 240, 268
 Udvān-Tīzān 25, 29, 190
ulang 63, 295
 Ūljāitū b. Arghūn, Ilkhanid ruler (r. 703–716/1304–1316) 71, 294, 297
ulkā 55, 64, 73, 121
 Ulugh Bēg b. Shāh Rukh, Timurid ruler (r. 850–853/1447–1449) 10, 69, 176
 Ulūs Chaghatai 9, 67
ulūs, *ulūsāt* 9–10, 32, 51, 64, 71, 158, 173
 ‘Umar Bī. b. Dāniyāl Bī Manghīt 272
 ‘Unāb b. Dilāvar Tāymanī 180
 ‘*umnāb*, jujube tree 36
 Urāz Khān Toqtamish Teke 230, 232, 262–264
urdū 62, 76, 165
 Ūrganj 45, 156, 207, 246, 273
 Urmīya 99, 207
 Urūmī(s) 73
 Urūzgān 167
ushtur gardan 23
 Ūst Yurt plateau 245, 250
 Ustājilū Qizilbāsh 53, 55–56, 83
 Ūtār Khān (Dhū al-Faqār Khān), governor of Qandahār (1652–1662/63) 80
 Utman Khēl Pashtūn(s) 104
ūymāq, *ūymāqāt* 51, 55, 57, 72, 84, 92–93, 96–97, 118–120, 131–132, 137, 140, 143, 146, 156–160, 162, 165, **169–181**, 189, 194, 296
 Uzbek(s) 3, 5, 10–12, 45–46, 48–51, 53, 56–57, 61, 63, 65–66, 72–73, 105, 113, 115, 122, 137, 155–156, 160, 170, 181, 195–196, 232, 240, 244, 246, 248–249, 262, 268, 294
 Ūzūn Ḥasan Āq Quyūnlū (r. 861–882/1457–1478) 10–11
 Vafādār Khān, see Faṭḥullāh Khān Sadūzai Kāmrankhēl Vafādār Khān
 Vafādār Khān, see Raḥmatullāh b. Faṭḥullāh Khān Sadūzai Kāmrankhēl Mu‘tamad al-Daula Vafādār Khān
 Vafādār Khān, see Shāh Ḥusain Vafādār Khān b. Maudūd Sadūzai

- Vahīd al-Dīn Muḥammad, a disciple of Zain al-Dīn Abū Bakr Tāybādī 133–134, 136
- vajh-i chūpānbēgī* 135
- Vajīhullāh Mīrzā Saif al-Mulk, governor of Bujnūrd and Gurgān (ca. 1888–1891/92) 237
- vakīl, vukalā* 55, 123, 138, 150, 214
- Vakīl al-Daula, see Jaʿfar Khān Zaʿfarānlū Vakīl al-Daula
- Vakīl al-Daula, see Ṭahmāsp Khān Jalāyir Vakīl al-Daula (d. 1747)
- vālī* 91, 114–115, 273
- valī ʿahd* 241, 300
- Valī Muḥammad Khān b. Jānī Muḥammad, Tuqai-Timurid Khan (r. 1014–1020/1606–1612) 49–50
- Valī Nīʿmat, see Naṣrullāh Mīrzā Valī Nīʿmat Afshār (d. 1786)
- vaqf, auqāf* 135
- Varāmīn 92, 141
- vataḍ, autād* 19, 157
- vaṭan* 297
- vazīr* 19–20, 37, 51, 91, 115, 120, 131–132, 136–138, 144, 147, 162–163, 198–199, 211, 221–223, 232–233, 235, 263, 278–279, 300
- vilāyat, vilāyāt* 16–18, 24, 29, 35–37, 40, 42–43, 51–52, 57, 70, 99, 102, 107, 110, 116, 118, 135, 137, 140, 155, 165, 182, 186–187, 190, 192, 195, 197–198, 200, 220, 224, 240, 252, 270, 273
- vizārat* 51, 138
- walnuts, see also *jauz* 31, 35–37
- watermelons, see also *hindivāna* 38, 40
- wheat 30, 106, 138, 158, 161, 172, 180, 188–190, 213, 255, 282–283
- Yaḥyābād 36
- yailāq* 31, 33, 63–64, 81, 128, 211, 295
- Yak Aulang 192
- Yalangtūsh I b. Maḥmūd Jamshīdī (contemporary of Shāh Zamān Sadūzai, Faṭḥ ʿAlī Shāh Qājār) 119, 171, 176, 221
- Yalangtūsh II Amīn al-Daula b. Mīhdī Qulī Jamshīdī, (d. 1886) 177–178
- Yamīn al-Daula, see Sulṭān Masʿūd Mīrzā Yamīn al-Daula (Ḍill al-Sulṭān) (1850–1918)
- Yār Muḥammad Sihām al-Daula b. Yazdān Qulī Shādillū (d. 1322/1904–5), governor of Bujnūrd (1871–1904/05), governor of Astarābād (1302–1304/1885–1887) 212–213, 237
- Yār Muḥammad Ḍahīr al-Daula b. ʿAbdullāh Alakūzai, *vazīr* and ruler of Herat (d. 1267/1851) 131, 144, 151, 161–163, 170–171, 173–174, 176, 178–180, 184, 187, 190–191, 200, 224–225, 227, 229, 231, 234, 263, 286–287, 290
- yāsā* 106
- Yasaʿur, Chaghataid prince 23
- yasāvul, yasāvulbāshī* 101–102, 219, 275
- Yazd 3, 58, 62–63, 131, 149, 223, 239, 284
- Yazdānbakhsh b. Shāh Rukh Afshār 126
- Yazdānvirdī b. Rizā Qulī Zaʿfarānlū 231
- Yerevan 207–208, 225
- Yolotan 26, 34, 188, 251, 265–266, 272, 275, 278
- Yomut Turkmen(s) 170, 212, 225, 235, 244, 246–248, 250–251, 253–261
- Yukhārībāsh Qājār(s) 253
- yūrt* 107, 120, 140
- Yūsuf ʿAlī Khān Jalāyir, *vakīl al-salṭana* of Shāh Rukh Afshār 109, 122–125, 211
- Yūsuf ʿAlī Khān Qarāʿī, governor of Ghūriyān (appointed in 1804) 218
- Yūsuf Kāshgharī, Khvāja 255
- Yūsuf Khān Hazāra, Īlbēgī, governor of Bākhaz (1877–1881) 175, 279
- Yūsuf Khān Mīr-i Shikārbāshī, governor of Astarābād until 1606/07 252
- Yūsuf Sulṭān Chamishgazak 56
- Yūsufzai Pashtūn(s) 104, 270
- Zābul 6, 70, 240
- Zābulistān 70, 105, 196, 241, 282, 300
- Zaʿfarānlū Kurd(s) 102, 109, 121, 125, 127, 207, 210, **211–212**, 223–224, 231, 234–236, 240, 250, 257, 260–261, 271, 281
- Ḍahḥāk 34
- Zāhid b. ʿĀbid Sadūzai, governor of Multān (1738–1748) 82
- Zāhidān 282
- Ḍahīr al-Daula, see Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Khān Afshār Ḍahīr al-Daula (d. 1738)
- Ḍahīr al-Daula, see Muḥammad Nāṣir Khān Qājār Develū Ḍahīr al-Daula (d. 1877)
- Ḍahīr al-Daula, see Yār Muḥammad Khān Alakūzai (d. 1851)
- Ḍahīr al-Dīn Muḥammad Bābur b. ʿUmar Shaikh, founder of the Mughal dynasty (r. 910–936/1504–1530) 32, 35, 45, 49, 57, 69, 72, 74, 76, 82
- Zain al-Dīn Abū Bakr Tāybādī (d. 791/1389) 37–38, 42, 134
- Zain al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Khvāfi, Naqshbandī *pīr* (d. 838/1434–35) 37
- Zain Khān, Afghan governor of Sirhind 112
- Zaināl Khān Shāmlū, Safavid governor of Herat (1513–1516) 51, 56–57
- zakāt* 273
- Zamān b. Daulat Sadūzai 74, 82, 87, 89, 105
- Zamān b. Tīmūr Shāh, Sadūzai ruler (r. 1793–1801) 5, 103, 116, 118–119, 129–132, 160, 196–199, 214, 218, 290, 298
- Zamān b. Tīmūr, Sadūzai ruler (r. 1793–1801) 116, 198, 298

Zamān b. Ḥajjī Karīmdād Bāmīzai, *nā'ib* of Herat (1797–1798) 131
 Zamān Khān Jamshīdī 173
 Zamīndāvar 34, 52, 70, 72, 93, 164–165, 192, 196, 198, 282
 Zand(s) 12, 103, 115, 121, 125, 198, 200, 207, 213, 254, 259
 Zangū'ī Arab(s) 130, 205–206, 208, **214**
 Zarafshān 7, 250
zardālū, see also apricots 36
 Zāva 40, 56–57, 224
 Zāval 36

Zāva-Maḥvilāt **40**, 51, 214
 Ṣill al-Sulṭān, see Sulṭān Mas'ūd Mīrzā Yamīn al-Daula (1850–1918)
zirā'at 16, 26
zirishk 213
 Ziyāratgāh 20, 28, 43
 Zūrābād 52, 92, 96, 133, 265
 Zūrī(s) 51, 119, 169, 189
 Zūzan 88

Glossary¹

amīr: “commander”, “prince,” a title conferred on high-ranking military officers.

amīr al-umarā: a commander-in-chief of the Qizilbash tribesmen (early Safavid period).

amīr ākhūrbāshī: master of the royal stables (Safavid, Durrānī periods).

āq saqāl: “whitebeard,” a tribal elder among Teke Turkmen.

ark (arg): citadel.

āsiyāvār: measure of water sufficient to drive one mill.

‘atabāt: “thresholds,” the Shiite shrine cities of Iraq: Najaf, Karbalā’, Kāẓimain, and Samarra.

atālīq: a high-ranking Uzbek dignitary.

atek, etek, ītāk: edge, hem, foot of a mountain.

b.: abbreviation for *ibn*, “son of”.

bāgh, bāghāt, bāghistān: intensive garden and orchard cultivation in walled plots of land.

bāra: rampart, embankment

bēglerbēg(ī): a provincial governor (Safavid, Afsharid, early Qājār periods).

bt.: abbreviation for *bint*, “daughter of”.

bulūk: administrative subdivision of a province (*vilāyat*) (Timurid, Safavid periods); agricultural and pasture lands surrounding a city (*balda va bulūkāt*).

bunicha: group tax assessment of a village.

chahār-su: central bazaar.

chāpār: postal messenger.

charkhchībāshī: vanguard general (Sadūzai period).

chārvā: a nomad Turkmen.

¹ Sources: Algar, “‘Atabāt,” *E.Ir.* II: 902–4; Allen 1981; Amanat 1997: 227; Barthold 1984: 89; Burton-Page, “Misāḥa,” *E.I.*, 2 VII: 137–40; De Jong, “Khalīfa, iii. In Islamic Mysticism,” *E.I.*, 2 IV: 950; Doerfer 1963–1975; Haneda 1987; Hillenbrand 1999: 283–4; Hinz 1955; Krawulsky 1984; Lambton 1963; Lambton 1991: 150; 405–10; 444–65; Manz 2007; McChesney 1991: 321–4; Röhrborn 1966: 13–14; Savory 1964; Savory 2002: 17; Subtelny 1988, 1991, 1993, 2002; Szuppe 1996: 85; Thackston 1994: 314, 639–642; Wiesehöfer 2005: 117.

chumūr: a settled Turkmen.

dāng: the sixth part of anything; unit of water; a *dirham*; the sixth part of a *kapakī dīnār*.

dār al-salṭana: “seat of government”; title of Herat from Timurid times on.

dārūgha: chief of security.

dasht: unwatered land.

daimcha: dry farming.

dhikr: commemoration of God.

dhikr-i jahriya, *dhikr-i jalī*: vocal *dhikr*.

dhar ‘-i *Iṣfahān*: unit of linear measure equivalent to 80 cm.

dhar ‘-i *shar* ī: unit of linear measure equivalent to 50 cm.

dīvānbēgī: officer in charge of justice and finances (Timurid, Safavid, Sadūzai periods).

fard: unit of land measurement in the Herat region (18th century).

fard: single verse.

farsakh, *farsang*: from *parasang* in Achaemenid times; distance that can be traveled on horseback in one hour, roughly four miles.

faṣīl: counterscarp: the exterior slope or wall of the ditch of a fort; curtain wall crowning the counterscarp.

fathnāma: a dispatch announcing victory.

gaz: unit of linear measure equivalent to 95 cm.

gaz-i mukassar: “broken” *gaz*, a measurement of surface area varying in length from 63.1 to 68.8 cm.

ḥākim: governor.

ḥukmrān: governor.

ikhrājāt: extraordinary taxes.

ikhrājāt-i mamlakatī: extraordinary provincial taxes.

īlbeḡī, *īlkhānī*: titles of tribal leadership in Khurāsān (Afsharid, Qājār periods).

imām: the prayer leader at a mosque; a descendant of ‘Alī.

imām-i jum‘a: *imām* who recites the Friday prayer for the sovereign.

ishīk āqāsī (bāshī): chamberlain (Safavid, Sadūzai, Qājār periods).

īvān (also *aivān*): a vaulted or flat-roofed hall, open at one end; covered hall in a mosque or a palace.

iyālat: province (Timurid, Safavid periods).

jāgīr: a land assignment in India (Mughal period).

jarīb: unit of area, equal to 60 *gaz* by 60 *gaz*; equivalent to approximately 1,600 m² in the late medieval period; equivalent to 960 m² in the seventeenth century; varies between 1,707 and 4,097 m² in 19th-century Central Asia.

kadkhudā: an overseer of a city quarter; village headman; headmen of a tribal subdivision (from Timurid period onwards).

kalāntar: an urban official concerned with taxation and the maintenance of public order (Safavid to Qājār periods); head of a tribal subgroup larger than that under a *kadkhudā*.

kapakī dīnār: monetary unit, made up of 6 copper *dīnār (dāng)* (Timurid period).

kārīz: a subterranean water channel.

kārgudhār: agent, local government representative (Qājār period).

khākrīz: earthwork, glacis.

khalīfa: successor, disciple of a Sufi *pīr*, who receives permission to initiate novices and guide them on the mystical path.

khāliṣa: crown land.

khān: derives from *khaghan*, title of ruling descendants of Chingiz Khan (Mongol, Timurid periods); dignitary title awarded to nobles (Safavid period).

khānaqāh: Sufi convent.

khandaq: moat.

kharāj: land tax.

kharvār: donkey load; equivalent to 100 *mann* or 300 kg (Timurid period).

khēl: lineage.

khuṭba: the section of the Friday prayer during which the name of the ruling king is announced.

kibitka: a Turkmen tent.

kurūh: measure of distance, one-third of a *farsang*.

lala, lālā: tutor to a prince (Safavid period).

madrasa: college or seminary.

majlis: council.

mamālik-i maḥrūsa: guarded domains.

mann: unit of weight, the Herati *mann* weighed about 3 kg.

maqṣūra: enclosed space next to the prayer-niche, usually reserved for the ruler.

marda: the tenth part of anything, a measure in irrigation.

masjid-i jāmiʿ: Friday mosque.

mavājib: salary.

mazraʿa, pl. *mazāriʿ*: farm, hamlet.

mīr munshī: chief secretary.

muhrdār: keeper of seals (Sadūzai period).

munshī: secretary.

muqātila: battlement.

murshid: spiritual preceptor.

mustaufī: revenue accountant; the chief revenue officer of a district.

mustaufī al-mamālik: chief revenue officer of the kingdom.

mutavallī: trustee or administrator of an endowment.

mutavallī bāshī: chief trustee.

nāʾib: viceregent, deputy governor of province (Afsharid, Sadūzai, Qājār periods).

nasaqchī: imperial bodyguard.

nasaqchī bāshī: a commander of the imperial bodyguard (Sadūzai period).

pīshkash: a gift presented as fealty or homage to a ruler, due levied in the form of a “present”.

pīr: Sufi teacher.

qā'ān: derives from *khaghan*, title of certain Mongol rulers.

qanāt: underground water channel.

qarāvul: patrol, scout.

qarya: village.

qaum: tribe, community.

qāzī: Muslim judge; adjudicates disputes according to the *sharī'a*.

qirān: shortened from *ṣāhib qirān*, a silver coin worth the tenth of a gold *tūmān*.

qishlāq: winter camp.

qizilbāsh: “red-head,” originally used as a designation for the Turkmen adherents of the Safavids on account of the red felt cap worn as sign of membership in the order; the Qizilbāsh were a nomadic tribal organization headed by Turkmen military elite; after the Safavid period this term came to designate Iranians in general.

qulba: “plough”, a basic unit of land measurement: the portion of land which could be cultivated by one farmer with one yoke of oxen and one plough.

qullarāqāsī: royal guard (Safavid, Sadūzai periods, 19th-century Herat).

qūrchībāshī: a commander of the Turkmen tribal cavalry known as *qūrchīs* (Safavid period).

rafz: repudiation of the legitimacy of the Sunni caliphate.

ribāt: fortified Muslim monastery or frontier post.

ṣadr: head of the religious institution (Safavid period).

ṣadr-i a'zam: chief minister, prime minister (Qājār period).

ṣāhib-i ikhtiyār: a dignitary in charge of local government (Afsharid, Sadūzai periods).

ṣāhib-i kār: bailiff, inspector (Sadūzai, Qājār periods).

ṣāhib qirān: lit. “born under the auspicious conjunction of Venus and Jupiter”, title of Tīmūr.

ṣahn: courtyard in Imām Rīzā's shrine.

sardār: local military commander attached to a city (Timurid period); military governor of a province (Sadūzai period).

sarḥadd-dār: frontier officials appointed by Amīr 'Abd al-Raḥmān.

sarkarda: a provincial government agent (Qājār period).

sar shumār: poll tax.

shālī: paddy.

shīr ḥājī (in British sources often rendered as “shirazi”): parapeted trench; in the fortifications of Herat: trenches cut into the exterior slope of the rampart which communicated with one another and with the town by subterranean passages; in these trenches, which were about 6½ or 7 ft deep, nearly the whole garrison was stationed (19th century).

sikka: striking of coins in the name of ruler.

sipahsālār: commander-in-chief (late Safavid to Qājār periods).

siyāsat: royal authority, coercive capacity of the ruler.

ṣuffa: portico, vestibule in mosque.

suyūrghāl: Mongolian “favour”, a hereditary tax revenue grant (Qarā Quyūnlū to Qājār periods; predominant form of landholding under the Timurids).

ṭilā: Bukharan gold coin.

tīm: commercial compound.

tūpchībāshī: chief of artillery (Safavid, Afsharid, Sadūzai periods).

tūmān: a quantity of 10,000; military and monetary unit.

tuyūl: temporary grant of the right to collect government taxes (Ilkhanid to Qājār periods).

ulang: grassy meadow, grazing pasture.

ulkā: district, tribal lands.

ūlūs, *ulūs*: a coalition of tribal groups in the service of a Mongol ruler.

urdū: camp.

urdū-yi humāyuūn: royal camp.

ūymāq: a group of people, a tribe (Mongol period); later on: a territorial and administrative subdivision in the sense of “district”.

vakīl: representative, viceregent of the Shāh (early Safavid period), a local representative (Afsharid, Sadūzai periods).

vazīr: provincial administrator, second official after the governor (Timurid, Safavid, Qājār periods).

vazīr-i niẓām: provincial military commander (Qājār period).

vilāyat: province, region, the spiritual authority of a saint.

yailāq: summer pasture.

yasāvul: sergeant-at-arms (Timurid, Safavid, Afsharid periods); tribal militia of the Teke Turkmens (19th century).

yūrt: tribal pasture.

zauj (equivalent of *qulba*): amount of land which can be cultivated by a yoke of oxen.

zirāʿat: agriculture in open fields.

Bibliography

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SOURCES

- Adamiyat, Fereydoun (1971), "Problems in Iranian Historiography," in: *Iranian Studies* 4,4: 132–56.
- Afshar, Iraj (1992), "Iranian Historiography in Persian," in: *The East and the Meaning of History, Proceedings, International Conference, Rome, 23–27 November 1992*, Rome: Bardi Editore: 219–42.
- Afshar, Iraj (2002), "Persian Travelogues: A Description and Bibliography," in: *Society and Culture in Qajar Iran*, edited by Elton L. Daniel. Costa Mesa: Mazda Publishers: 145–62.
- Afshar, Iraj (2003), "Maktub and Majmu'a: Essential Sources for Safavid Research," in: *Society and Culture in the Early Modern Middle East: Studies on Iran in the Safavid Period*, edited by Andrew J. Newman. Leiden: Brill: 51–61.
- Afzalī, Muḥammad A. (1984), *Fihrist-i nusakh-i khaṭṭī-yi ārshīv-i millī-yi Afghānistān*. Kabul: Department of Culture.
- Akhmedov, B. A. (1991), "The Bahr al-Asrar of Mahmud B. Vali and Its Study in the USSR and Elsewhere," translated by Devin DeWeese, *Journal of Asian History* 25,2: 163–80.
- Ali, Ashraf (1890), *A Catalogue of the Persian Books and Manuscripts in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*. Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press.
- Amanat, Abbas (2004), "Historiography viii. Qajar Period," in: *E.Ir.* XII: 369–77.
- Aubin, Jean (1995), "Chroniques persanes et relations italiennes: Notes sur les sources narratives du règne de Šāh Esmā'il Ier," in: *Studia Iranica* 24,2: 247–59.
- Aumer, Joseph (1970 [1866]), *Die persischen Handschriften der K. Hof- und Staatsbibliothek in Muenchen*. Repr. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Bernardini, Michele (2008), *Mémoire et propagande à l'époque timouride*. Paris, Assoc. pour l'Avancement des Études Iraniennes.
- Boyle, J. A. (1962), "Juvayni and Rashid al-Din as Sources on the History of the Mongols," in: *Historians of the Middle East*, edited by Bernard Lewis and P. M. Holt. London: Oxford University Press.
- Bregel, Yuri E. (1995), *Bibliography of Islamic Central Asia*. Bloomington: RIFIAS, Indiana University.
- Browne, Edward G. (1896), *A Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the Library of the University of Cambridge*. Cambridge: University Press.
- Browne, Edward G. (1900), *A Hand List of the Muḥammadan Manuscripts, Including All Those Written in Arabic Character, Preserved in the Library of the University of Cambridge*. Cambridge: University Press.
- Browne, Edward G. (1917), "The Persian Manuscripts of the Late Sir Albert Houtum-Schindler, K.C.I.E.," in: *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*, Oct. 1917: 657–94.
- Browne, Edward G. (1951 [1924]), *A History of Persian Literature in Modern Times*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Browne, Edward G. (1951–1953) *A Literary History of Persia*. 4 vols. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Calmard, Jean/Mossadegh, Ali Asghar/Bastani Parizi, M. (1987), "Notes sur des historiographes de l'époque safavide," in: *Studia Iranica* 16,2: 123–136.
- Edwards, E.A. (1922), *Catalogue of the Persian Printed Books in the British Museum*. London.
- Emerson, John (1990), "Some General Accounts of the Safavid and Afsharid Period, Primarily in English," in: *Persian and Islamic Studies: In Honour of P. W. Avery*, edited by Charles Melville. Cambridge: University of Cambridge Centre of Middle Eastern Studies: 27–41.
- Ethé, Hermann (1903, 1937), *Catalogue of the Persian manuscripts in the Library of India Office*. Oxford: India Office.
- Farmayan, Hafez F. (1974), "Observations on Sources for the Study of Nineteenth- und Twentieth-Century Iranian History," in: *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 5: 32–49.
- Haneda, Masashi (1987), "Principales Sources Persanes," in: *Le Chāh et les Qizilbāš. Le système militaire safavide. Islamkundliche Untersuchungen*, Vol. 119. Berlin: Klaus Schwarz: 10–28.
- Haneda, Masashi (1994), "Iran," in: *Islamic Urban Studies. Historical Review and Perspectives*, edited by Masashi Haneda and Toru Miura. London: Kegan Paul International: 235–279.
- Hidāyatī, Hādī (1955), "Mukhtaṣarī dar bāra-yi vaqāyī'-nigārī va nusakh-i khaṭṭī-yi fārsī marbūṭ ba tārikh-i qarn-i davāzdahum-i hijrī," in: *Majalla-yi Dānishkada-yi Adabiyāt* 2,3: 17–46.
- Hinz, Walther (1936), "Quellenstudien zur Geschichte der Timuriden," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 90,2: 357–98.
- I'timādī, Gūyā (1322/1943), "Saifī al-Haravī," in: *Āryānā* 1,10: 16–20.
- Kasravī, Aḥmad (1927), "Tārikh-i ta'lif-i Nuzhat al-qulūb," in: *Āyanda* 2: 324–5.
- Komatsu, Hisao (1994), "Central Asia," in: *Islamic Urban Studies. Historical Review and Perspectives*, edited by Masashi Haneda and Toru Miura. London: Kegan Paul International: 281–328.
- Kukhtina, T.I. (1965), *Bibliografiia Afghānistana Literatura na russkom iazyke*. Moscow.

- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1962), "Persian Biographical Literature," in: *Historians of the Middle East*, edited by Bernard Lewis and P. M. Holt. London/Oxford: Oxford University Press: 141–51.
- Lockhart, Laurence (1958), "Appendix VI," in *ibid.*, *The Fall of the Safavi Dynasty and the Afghan Occupation of Persia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Losensky, Paul E. (2003), "The Palace of Praise and the Melons of Time: Descriptive Patterns in 'Abdī Bayk Šīrāzī's Garden of Eden," in: *Eurasian Studies* 2,1: 1–29.
- Manābi 'va ma'ākhidh-i 'ashāyir-i Īrān (1366/1987). Tehran: Mu'assasa-yi Muṭāla'āt va Taḥqīqāt-i Ijtimā'i-yi Dānishgāh-i Tīhrān.
- Manz, Beatrice Forbes (2007), "Issues of Sources and Historiography," in: *Ibid.*, *Power, Politics and Religion in Timurid Iran*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 49–78.
- Maslovskii, S.D. (1908), *Bibliografiia Afganistana*. St. Petersburg.
- Mazzaoui, Michel (1977), "From Tabriz to Qazwin to Isfahan: The phases of Safavid History," XILX Deutscher Orientalistentag vom 28. September bis 4. Oktober 1975 in Freiburg im B., in: *Zeitschrift der deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft, Supplement* 3,1: 514–22.
- Melville, Charles (1998a), "A Lost Source for the Reign of Shah 'Abbas: The Afzal al-tavārīkh of Faḏlī Khuzānī Ṣfahānī," in: *Iranian Studies* 31,2: 263–5.
- Melville, Charles (1998b), "Hamd Allah Mustawfi's Zafarnamah and the Historiography of the Late Ilkhanid Period," in: *Iran and Iranian Studies: Essays in Honor of Iraj Afshar*, edited by Kambiz Eslami. Princeton: Zagros: 1–12.
- Melville, Charles (2003), "New Light on the Reign of Shah 'Abbas: Volume III of the Afzal al-tavārīkh," in: *Society and Culture in the Early Modern Middle East: Studies on Iran in the Safavid Period*, edited by Andrew J. Newman. Leiden: Brill: 63–96.
- Melville, Charles (2008), "Between Tabriz and Herat: Persian Historical Writing in the 15th Century," in: *Iran und iranisch geprägte Kulturen. Studien zum 65. Geburtstag von Bert G. Fragner*, edited by Markus Ritter, Ralph Kauz und Birgitt Hoffmann, Wiesbaden, 28–38.
- Meredith-Owens, G. M. (1962), "A Short Account of the First Volume of the Afzal al-tavārīkh of Faḏlī Ṣfahānī and Its Author," in: *The British Museum Quarterly* 25,1–2: 24–26.
- Morley, William H. (1978 [1854]), *A Descriptive Catalogue of the Historical Manuscripts in the Arabic and Persian Languages Preserved in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society*. Repr. Osnabrück: Biblio Verlag.
- Nāyil, 'A Ḥ (1340/1961), "Riyāzī-yi Haravī," in: *Āryānā* 19,8: 27–33.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2004), "Historiography xi. Afghanistan," in: *E.Ir.* XII: 390–5.
- Okazaki, Shoko & Eura, Kinji (1985), *Bibliography on Qajar Persia*. Osaka: Osaka University of Foreign Studies.
- Paul, Jürgen, "Herat, v. Local Histories," in: *E.Ir.* XII: 217–19.
- Perry, John R. (1979), "Survey and Assessment of Sources," in: *Ibid.*, *Karim Khan Zand. A History of Iran from 1747–1779*. Chicago: Center for Middle Eastern Studies: 303–16.
- Pertsch, Wilhelm (1859), *Die persischen Handschriften der Herzoglichen Bibliothek zu Gotha*. Wien: Kaiserl. Königl. Hof- und Staatsdruckerei.
- Pertsch, Wilhelm (1888), *Die Handschriften-Verzeichnisse der königlichen Bibliothek zu Berlin. Vierter Band: Verzeichnis der Persischen Handschriften*. Berlin: Asher & Co.
- Quinn, Sholeh A. (1996), "The Historiography of Safavid Prefaces," in: *Safavid Persia. The History and Politics of an Islamic Society. Pembroke Papers* 4, edited by Charles Melville. London: I.B. Tauris: 1–25.
- Quinn, Sholeh (1998), "Notes on Timurid Legitimacy in Three Safavid Chronicles," in: *Iranian Studies* 31,2: 149–58.
- Quinn, Sholeh A. (2000), *Historical Writing during the Reign of Shah 'Abbas. Ideology, Imitation, and Legitimacy in Safavid Chronicles*. Salt Lake City: The University of Utah Press.
- Qinn, Sholeh A., "The Timurid Historiographic Legacy: A Comparative Study of Persianate Historical Writing," in: *Society and Culture in the Early Modern Middle East: Studies on Iran in the Safavid Period*, edited by Andrew J. Newman. Leiden: Brill: 19–31.
- Riazul Islam (1979a), "Travelogue of Mahmud b. Amir Wali," in: *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 27,2: 88–120.
- Riazul Islam (1979b), *A Calendar of Documents on Indo-Persian Relations (1500–1750)*. Vol. I. Karachi: Institute of Central and West Asian Studies.
- Rieu, Charles (1879–1895), *Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the British Museum*. London: Gilbert and Rivington.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1939), "Die Quellen," in: *Der Niedergang Irans nach dem Tode Ismā'īls des Grausamen 1577–1581*. Würzburg: Konrad Triltsch Verlag: 94–100.
- Romodina, V. A. (1967), *Afghan Studies*. Part of *Fifty Years Soviet Oriental Studies. Brief Reviews: 1917–1967*. Moscow.
- Rota, Giorgio (1996), "Vāṣefi e i suoi tempi: uno sguardo alle *Badāye' o 'l-vaqāye'*," in: *Oriente Moderno*, n.s. 15,2: 139–64.
- Rota, Giorgio (1998), "Three Little-Known Persian Sources of the Seventeenth Century," in: *Iranian Studies* 31,2: 159–76.
- Sachau, E. and H. Ethé (1889–1920), *Catalogue of the Persian, Turkish, Hindūstānī and Pushtū Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Safa, Z. (1986), "Persian Literature in the Timurid and Türkmen Periods," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*, edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 913–28.
- Semenov, A. A. (1960), *Catalogue of Oriental Manuscripts of the Academy of Science, Uzbekistan*. Tashkent.
- Shaban, Riza (2003), "Historiography in the First Half of 18th Century A.D. Book under Review: *Tarikh-i-Nadirshahi*," in: *Development of Persian Historiography in India*, edited by S. M. Waseem. New Delhi: Iran Culture House.

- Shākīrī, Ramazān 'Alī (1982–1984), “Manābī' va ma'ākhidh-i tārikh-i Mashhad va Tūs,” in *Mishkāt* 1: 209–15; 2: 195–203; 3: 206–213; 4: 225–237; 5: 152–178.
- Sarwar, Ghulam (1975 [1939], “Authorities,” in: Ibid., *History of Shah Ism'ail Safawi*. New York: AMS Press: 3–16.
- Snesarev, A. E. (1921), *Avғанistan*. Moscow: Gosud. Izdat: 20–39.
- Storey, C.A. (1927, 1939, 1953), *Persian Literature. A Bio-bibliographical Survey*. London: Luzac & Co.
- Szuppe, Maria (1992), “Hérat au début du xvie siècle: Témoins du changement d'époques,” in: Ibid., *Entre Timourides, Uzbeks et Safavides. Questions d'histoire politique et sociale de Hérat dans la première moitié du XVI siècle*. Paris: Studia Iranica, Cahier 12: 49–60.
- Szuppe, Maria (2004), “Historiography v. Timurid Period,” in: *E.Ir.* XII: 356–63.
- Tauer, Felix (1968), “History and Biography,” in: *History of Iranian Literature*, edited by Jan Rypka. Dordrecht: Reidel.
- Trausch, Tilmann (forthcoming), *Formen höfischer Historiographie im 16. Jahrhundert: Geschichtsschreibung unter den frühen Safaviden: 1501-1578*.
- Tucker, Ernest (2004), “Historiography, vii. Afsharid and Zand Periods,” in: *E.Ir.* XII: 367–9.
- Tumanovich, Nataliya N. (1989), “Istochniki i istoriografiya problemi,” in: Ibid., *Gerat b XVI–XVIII vekax*. Moscow: 9–37.
- Woods, John E. (1987), “The Rise of Timurid Historiography,” in: *Journal of Near Eastern Studies* 46,2: 81–108.

PRIMARY SOURCES

PERSIAN SOURCES

- 'Abbās Qulī Khān *Safarnāma-yi Bukhārā*, 1260/1844, ed. Ḥusain Zamānī, Tehran 1373/1994.
- 'Abd al-'Alī Bīrjandī (d. 934/1527–28), *Falāḥatnāma (Davāzdah bāb-i kishāvarzī)*, ed. Īraj Afshār, Tehran 1387/2008.
- 'Abd al-Karīm b. 'Aqibat Maḥmūd Kashmīrī, *Bayān-i vāqī'* (also known as *Nādirnāma* or *Tārikh-i nādirī*), 1156/1743–44,
 a) British Library MS Add. 8909;
 b) ed. K. B. Naṣīm, Lahore 1970.
 b) partial English translation by H. G. Pritchard (British Library, MS., Add. 30782, foll. 64–112);
 c) English transl. Gladwin 1788;
 d) French transl. of Gladwin by Langlès 1797.
- 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Aḥmad Jāmī, *Nafaḥāt al-uns min ḥazarāt al-quds*, ed. Miḥdī Tauḥīdīpūr, Tehran 1336/1957.
- 'Abd al-Raḥmān Khān, *Tāj al-tavārikh*,
 a) ed. Muḥammad Ja'far Maulā and Muḥammad Ḥusain Lārī, Bombay 1904;
 b) repr. Peshawar (?) 1994.
- 'Abd al-Raḥmān Fāmī Haravī (d. 546/1151–52), *Tārikh-i Harāt*, facsimile edition, Tehran 1387/2008.
- 'Abd al-Razzāq b. Najaf Qulī Dunbulī, *Ma'āthir-i sulṭānīya*, 1241/1825–26,
 a) ed. Ghulām Ḥusain Šadrī Afshār, Tehran 1972;
 b) ed. Fīrūz Maṣṣūrī, Tehran 1383/2004;
 c) transl. Brydges [1833] 1973.
- 'Abd al-Razzāq Samarqandī (d. 1482), *Maṭla'-'i sa'dain va majma'-'i baḥrain*,
 a) ed. Muḥammad Shafī', 2 vols., Lahore 1365–68/1946–49;
 b) ed. 'Abd al-Ḥusain Navā'ī, Tehran 1353/1974, 1372/1993.
- 'Abd al-Vaḥḥāb b. 'Alī Ashraf b. Ismā'īl Shīrāzī, *Nukhbat al-akhbār*, 1257–1265/1841–1848, partial ed. Mīr Hāshim Muḥaddith, Tehran 1391/2012.
- 'Abdullāh b. Faẓlullāh al-Shīrāzī Vaṣṣāf, *Tārikh-i Vaṣṣāf*, ca 1300,
 a) lithography Bombay, 1269/1852–53;
 b) ed., transl. Hammer-Purgstall, Vienna 1856, 2010;
 c) facsimile edition Tehran 1338/1959.

- Abū Ishāq al-Iṣṭakhrī, *Kitāb al-masālik va al-mamālik*, 10th century,
 a) partial ed. J. H. Moeller, *Liber climatum*, Gotha, 1839;
 b) German translation Mordtmann 1847;
 c) partial Italian transl. A. Madini, *Il Segistan*, Milan, 1842;
 d) ed. De Goeje, *Bibliotheca geographorum arabicorum* I, Leiden 1870, 1927;
 e) ed. M. G. ‘Abd al-Ḥinī, Cairo 1381/1961.
- Abū al-Ḥasan b. Ibrāhīm Qazvīnī, *Favāyid-i Ṣafaviyya*, ca 1211/1796–7,
 a) British Library, OIOC, Add. 16,698;
 b) Royal Asiatic Society, Bengal, D 255;
 c) ed. Mariam Mīr Aḥmadi, Tehran 1988.
- Abū al-Ḥasan b. Muḥammad Amīn Gulistāna, *Mujmal al-tavārīkh pas az Nādir*, 1196/1781,
 a) partial ed. Oskar Mann, *Das Mujmil et-tārīkh-i ba’dnadādirīje*, 2 vols., Leiden 1891, 1896;
 b) *Mujmal al-tavārīkh pas az Nādir*, ed. Mudarris Raḡavī, Tehran 1901;
 c) partial transl. J. Sarkar, *Modern Review* 47 (1929).
- Abū al-Ḥasan Ghaffārī Kāshānī, *Gulshan-i murād (Tārīkh-i zandīya)*, 1206–07/1791–93; addenda up to 1210/1795–96 by his son Mīrzā Muḥammad Bāqir Kāshānī; ed. Ghulām Rizā Ṭabāṭabā’ī Majd, Tehran 1369/1990.
- Aḥmad b. Sharaf al-Dīn al-Ḥusain al-Ḥusainī al-Qumī, *Khulāṣat al-tavārīkh*, 999/1590–91,
 a) partial ed., German transl. Hans Müller (1964);
 b) partial ed., German transl. Erika Glassen (1970);
 c) ed. Iḥsān Ishrāqī, Tehran 1363/1984.
- Aḥmad Shāh Durrānī, *Nāma-yi Aḥmad Shāh Bābā ba nām-i Sulṭān Muṣṭafā thālith-i ‘uthmānī*,
 a) ed. Ghulām Jilānī Jalālī, Kabul 1346/1967;
 b) partial reprint in *Āryānā* 22,11–12 (1964): 41–58.
- Aḥmad b. ‘Umar b. ‘Alī Nizāmī ‘Arūzī Samarqandī, *Chahār maqāla*, first half of 6th/12th century, ed. Muḥammad Qazvīnī, Muḥammad Mu’īn, Tehran 1385/2006.
- Aḥmad Tattavī (d. 996/1588), *Tārīkh-i alfī*,
 a) ed. ‘Alī Āl-i Dāūd, Tehran 1378/1999;
 b) ed. Ghulām Rizā Ṭabāṭabā’ī Majd, Tehran 1382/2003.
- ‘Alī Muḥammad Khān Khudakka Sadūzai, *Tadhkirat al-mulūk-i ‘ālīsha’n*, Multan 1835.
- ‘Alī Naqī Naṣīrī, *Alqāb va mavājib-i daura-yi salāṭīn-i safaviyya*, ca 1731,
 a) ed. Yūsuf Raḥīmī, Mashhad 1371/1992–93;
 b) transl., ann. Willem Floor 2008.
- ‘Alī Qulī Ḥākim al-Mamālik, *Rūznāma-yi safar-i Khurāsān*, ca 1286/1869–70, ed. Tehran 1356/1977.
- ‘Alī Qulī Mīrzā I’tizād al-Saltāna, *Tārīkh-i vaqāyi’ va savāniḥ-i Afghanistan*, 1273/1856–57,
 a) lithography, Tehran 1273/1856–57;
 b) ed. Mīr Hāshim Muḥaddīth, Tehran 1365/1986.
- ‘Alī Qulī Mīrzā I’tizād al-Saltāna, *Iksīr al-tavārīkh (Tārīkh-i qājārīya az āghāz tā 1259 h.q. [1843])*, ed. Jamshīd Kiyānfār, Tehran 1370/1991.
- Amīr Maḥmūd b. Khvānd Amīr, *Shāh Ismā‘īl-i avval va Shāh Ṭahmāsp-i avval*, 957/1550,
 a) ed. Muḥammad ‘Alī Jarrāḥī, Tehran 1370/1991;
 b) ed. Ghulām Rizā Ṭabāṭabā’ī Majd, *Īrān dar rūzgār-i Shāh Ismā‘īl-i avval va Shāh Ṭahmāsb-i safavī*, Tehran 1370/1991.
- Aṣīl al-Dīn ‘Abdullāh Vā‘iz (d. 883/1478–79), *Maqṣad al-iqbāl sulṭānīya* (864/1459–60), ed. Fikrī Saljūqī, Kabul 1967.
- ‘Aṭā’ Muḥammad Shikārpūrī, Mīrzā (1271/1855), *Navā-yi ma‘ārik*, Kabul 1952.
- Bījan; *La vita e i tempi di Rostam Khan*, 1692
 a) British Library MS. Add 7,655;
 b) ed., transl. Rota 2009.

Būdāq Munshī Qazvīnī, *Javāhir al-akhbār*, 1577, ed. Muḥsin Bahrāmīnizhād, Tehran 2000.

Faiz Muḥammad, *Sirāj al-tavārīkh*,

- a) Kabul, 1912;
- b) English transl., ann. McChesney/Khorrami 2013.

Farhād Mīrzā Mu‘tamad al-Daula, *Jām-i Jam*,

- a) Tehran 1272/1855–56;
- b) Bombay 1273/1856–57.

Farhād Mīrzā Mu‘tamad al-Daula, *Zanbīl*, Tehran 1329/1911,

- a) ed. Muḥammad Ramaẓānī, Tehran 1345/1966;
- b) repr., Tehran 1367/1988.

Farīd al-Dīn Aḥmad, *Risāla-yi ansāb-i afāghina*, 1217/1802–03, Royal Asiatic Society MS. No. 63.

Faṣṭḥ Aḥmad b. Jalāl al-Dīn Muḥammad Khvāfī (d. 845–46/1442), *Mujmal-i faṣṭḥī*, 845/1441–42, 3 vols.,

- a) ed. Maḥmūd Farrukh, Tus & Mashhad 1341/1962;
- b) ed. Muḥsin Nājī Naṣrābādī, 3 vols., Tehran 1386/2007.

Faẓlī Khuzānī Iṣfahānī, *Afzal al-tavārīkh*, 1049/1639,

- Vol. I (Library of Eton College, MS Margoliouth No. 172);
- Vol. II (British Library, Ms. Or. 4678);
- Vol. III (Christ’s College, Cambridge, No. Dd. 5.6).

Faẓlullāh b. Rūzbihān Khunjī Iṣfahānī, *Mihmānnāma-yi Bukhārā* 915/1509,

- a) ed. Manūchihr Sutūda, Tehran 1341/1962;
- b) ed. Moscow 1976;
- c) German translation by Ursula Ott 1976.

Faẓlullāh b. Rūzbihān Khunjī Iṣfahānī, *Tārīkh-i ‘ālamārā-yi Amīnī*, ca 907/1501,

- a) transl., abridged by Minorsky 1957;
- b) transl., abridged by Minorsky 1957, revised and augmented by John E. Woods 1992;
- c) ed. Muḥammad Akbar ‘Āshiq. Tehran 1382/2003.

Faẓlullāh Shīrāzī (Khāvarī), *Tārīkh-i dhū al-qarnain*, 1249/1834–35, ed. Nāṣir Afshārfar, 2 vols., Tehran 2001.

Ghiyāth al-Dīn b. Humām al-Dīn Ḥusaini Khvānd Amīr (d. 942/1536), *Khulāṣat al-akhbār fī bayān aḥvāl al-akhyār*, 905/1499,

- a) partial English translation by Price 1821, Vol. 3;
- b) partial ed. Gūyā I‘timādī, *Faṣṭī az Khulāṣat al-akhbār*, Kabul 1345/1966.

Ghiyāth al-Dīn b. Humām al-Dīn Ḥusaini Khvānd Amīr, *Tārīkh ḥabīb al-siyar fī akhbār afrād al-bashar*, 1524,

- a) ed. Tehran, 4 vols, 1333/1954; 1353/1974; 1362/1983;
- b) partial English transl. Thackston 1994.

Ghulām Ḥasan Thamīn Bilgrāmī, *Ba‘zī az aḥvāl-i Aḥmad Shāh Bādshāh Abdālī*, partial translation by Irvine 1907.

Ghulām Ḥusain Afzal al-Mulk, *Safarnāma-yi Khurāsān va Kirmān*, 1320–21/1902–4, ed. Qudratullāh Raushanī Za‘farānlū, Tehran 1988.

Ghulām Ḥusain Afzal al-Mulk, *Afzal al-tavārīkh*, ed. Manṣūra Ittiḥādīya, Sīrūs Sa‘dvandīyān, Tehran 1361/1982.

Ghulām Ḥusain Khān Ṭabāṭabā‘ī, *Sair al-muta‘akhirīn*, 3 vols., Lucknow 1304/1886–87.

Ḥāfiz-i Abrū, *Tārīkh-i Ḥāfiz-i Abrū*, 817–823/1414–1420,

- a) partial ed. Māyil Haravī. Volume 4: *Khurāsān*, Tehran 1349/1970;
- b) partial ed., transl. Krawulsky 1982, 1984;
- c) ed. Ṣādiq Sajjādī, Tehran 1378/1999.

Ḥāfiz-i Abrū, *Zubdat al-tavārīkh*, ca 830/1427,

- a) ed. Sayyid Kamāl Ḥājj Sayyid Javādī. Tehran 1372/1993;
- b) English translation Maitra 1970.

Ḥāfiz-i Abrū, “Continuation du Zafarnama de Nizamuddin Sami par Hafiz-i Abru,” ed. Tauer 1956.

Ḥāfiẓ-i Abrū, *Panj risāla-yi tārikhī*, ed. Tauer 1959.

Ḥāfiẓ Muḥammad Fāzil Khān, *Tārikh-i manāzil-i Bukhārā*, 1812, ed., transl. Siddiqui 1993.

Ḥāfiẓ Raḥmat b. Shāh 'Ālam, *Khulāṣat al-ansāb*, 1184/1770

- a) OIOC, British Library;
- b) Cambridge;
- c) Bodleian Library, Ms. Ouseley 172.

Ḥamīd Kashmīrī, *Akbarnāma*, 1260/1844, Kabul 1951.

Hasan Bēg Rūmlū, *Aḥsan al-tavārikh*, 985/1577,

- a) ed., transl. Seddon 1931, 1934;
- b) ed. 'Abd al-Ḥusain Navā'ī. Tehran 1349/1970; 1357/1978.

Hasan Ḥusainī Fasā'ī, *Fārsnāma-yi nāṣirī*, 1314/1896,

- a) lithography, Tehran 1312–1314/1895–1897; facsimile ed., Tehran 1961;
- b) transl. Busse 1972;
- c) ed. Manṣūr Rastgār Fasā'ī, 2 vols, Tehran 1367/1988.

Hudūd al-'Ālam, 'The Regions of the World'. A Persian Geography 372 A.H.—982 A.D., translated and explained by V. Minorsky, repr., Cambridge 1980 [1937].

Ḥusain Abīvardī Faiẓī, fl. late 9th/15th century, "Chār takht," ed. Īraj Afshār, *Farhang-i Īrān Zamīn* 15 (1347/1968): 5–160.

Ibn 'Abd al-Karīm 'Alī Rizā Shīrāzī, *Tārikh-i zandīya*,

- a) Bayerische Staatsbibliothek;
- b) St. Petersburg;
- c) ed. E. Beer, *Das Tarih-i zendije des B. 'Abd el-Kerim 'Ali Riza von Shiraz*, Leiden 1888; repr. Tehran 1986.

Ibn Ḥauqal, *Ṣūrat al-arḥ*, 988,

- a) French transl. J. H. Kramers & G. Wiet 1964;
- b) ed. Beirut.

Ibrāhīm Amīnī Haravī (d. 1535), *Futūḥāt-i shāhī (Tārikh-i ṣafavī az āghāz tā sāl-i 920 h.q. [1514–15])*, written ca. 937/1531, ed. Muḥammad Rizā Naṣīrī, Tehran 1383/2004.

Imām al-Dīn al-Ḥusainī, *Tārikh-i ḥusainshāhī* or *Tavārikh-i aḥmadshāhī*, 1213/1798;

- a) National Archives, Kabul, 53/23;
- b) Khuda Bakhsh Oriental Public Library, Bankipore, Patna;
- c) Asiatic Society of Bengal, Calcutta, D 144;
- d) Sir Jadunath Sarkar Collection, National Library, Calcutta;
- e) Khalsa College, Amritsar;
- f) Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris;
- g) Royal Asiatic Society, London, Ms No. 61;
- h) British Library, OIOC, Or. 1662;
- i) "Chand safla az tārikh-i ḥusainshāhī," *Āryānā* 25 (4) (1346/1967): 26–33.

Iskandar Bēg, Munshī, *Tārikh-i 'ālamārā -yi 'abbāsī*, 1616, 1628–29,

- a) lithography Tehran 1314/1846;
- b) ed. Īraj Afshār, 2 vols., Tehran 1334–36/1955–57; 2nd ed. 1350/1971;
- c) ed. Muḥammad Ismā'īl Rizvānī, 3 vols., Tehran 1377/1998;
- d) transl. Savory 1978.

Iskandar Bēg, Munshī, *Dhail-i Tārikh-i 'ālamārā-yi 'abbāsī*, ca. 1634, ed. Suhailī Khvānsārī, Tehran 1317/1938.

Jalāl al-Dīn Muḥammad Munajjim Yazdī, *Tārikh-i 'abbāsī*, 1020/1611,

- a) British Museum Ms Add 27, 241;
- b) ed. S. Vaḥīdīniyā, Tehran 1366/1987.

Jamāl al-Dīn Afghānī, *Kitāb tatimmat al-bayān fī tārikh al-afghān*. Lahore.

- Maḥmūd al-Mūsavī, (Kitāb-i) *Aḥvāl-i aqvām va firqahā-yi afghān*, ca 1223/1808–09, British Library, OIOC, Or. 1861.
- Maḥmūd b. Hidāyatullāh Afūshā-yi Naṭanzī, *Nuqāvat al-āthār fī dhikr al-akhyār*, ca 1007/1598–99, ed. Iḥsān Ishrāqī, Tehran 1350/1971, 1373/1994.
- Maḥmūd b. Ibrāhīm al-Ḥusainī, *Tārīkh-i aḥmadshāhī*, ca 1186/1772–73,
 a) British Museum Or. 196, Or. 2059;
 b) Bombay University Library;
 c) Ganda Singh Collection;
 d) ed. Dostmurad Saidmuradov, 2 vols, Moscow 1974;
 e) ed. Sarvar Humāyūn, Peshawar 2001;
 f) ed. Ghulām Ḥusain Zargarīnizhād, Tehran 2005;
 g) ed. Muḥammad Sarvar Maulā'ī, Tehran 2007.
- Maḥmūd b. Amīr Valī Balkhī, *Baḥr al-asrār fī manāqib al-akhyār* (1050/1641),
 a) Volume 1, Academy of Science, Tashkent 3563/2372;
 b) Volume 6, section 4 (completed in 1045/1636, additions in 1050/1641), India Office MS (Ethé 575);
 c) Volume 6, sections 2–3, Academy of Science, Tashkent 3564/1385;
 d) partial and abridged Russian transl. Akhmedov 1977;
 e) partial ed. Riazul Islam 1980;
 f) partial English transl. Khan 1990–93.
- Maḥmūd Taqī Āshtiyānī, Mīrzā, *Ibratnāma. Khaṭirātī az daurān-i pas az janghā-yi Harāt va Marv*, ed. Ḥusain 'Imādī Āshtiyānī, Tehran 1382/2003.
- Maḥmūd Ṭarzī, *Maqālāt-i Maḥmūd Ṭarzī*, ed. Ravān Farhādī, Kabul 1355/1976.
- Malik Shāh Ḥusain b. Malik Ghiyāth al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Shāh Maḥmūd Sīstānī, *Iḥyā' al-mulūk*, 1028 or 1031/1618–19 or 1621–22, ed. Manūchihr Sūtūda, Tehran 1344/1966.
- Mir Abdoul Kerim Boukhary, *Histoire de l'Asie Centrale (Afghanistan, Boukhara, Khiva, Khoqand). Depuis les dernières années du règne de Nader Chah jusqu'en 1233 de l'Hégire (1740–1818)*, ed., transl. Ch. Schefer, Paris 1876; repr., Amsterdam 1970.
- Mīrzā Bēg b. Ḥasan Ḥusainī Junābadī, *Rauzat al-ṣafaviya*, 1036/1627,
 a) Istanbul, Süleymaniye kütphanesi, M.S. Lal Ismail 346;
 b) ed. Ghulām Rizā Ṭabāṭabā'ī Majd, Tehran 1378/1999.
- Mīrzā Rafī'ā (Muḥammad Rafī' Anṣārī), *Dastūr al-Mulūk*, ca 1725–1727,
 a) ed. Muḥammad Taqī Dānishpazhūh, *Majalla-yi Dānishkada-yi Adabiyāt va 'Ulūm-i Insānī* 16, 5–6 (1346/1967): 1–136;
 b) transl. Marcinkowski 2002;
 c) transl. Floor/Faghfoory 2007.
- Mīrzā Samī'ā, *Tadhkirat al-mulūk*, 1137/1725, transl. V. Minorsky, *A Manual of Safavid Administration*, London, 2nd ed., Cambridge 1980 [1943].
- Mīrzā Sang Muḥammad Badakhshī, *Tārīkh-i Badakhshān*, ca 1223/1808–9,
 a) ed. Boldirev, Leningrad 1959;
 b) ed. Manūchihr Sūtūda, Tehran 1367/1988.
- Muḥammad 'Abd al-Karīm 'Alavī, Munshī, *Tārīkh-i Aḥmad*, ca 1797,
 a) Universitätsbibliothek Tübingen, Depot der ehem. Preuß. Staatsbibliothek, Bibl. Sprenger Nr. 215;
 b) Lucknow 1850.
- Muḥammad 'Alī Ḥazīn, Shaikh, *Tadhkirat al-aḥvāl*, 1154/1742,
 a) ed. F. C. Belfour, London 1831;
 b) transl. F. C. Belfour, London 1830;
 c) ed. Muḥammad Bāqir Ulfat, Isfahan 1334/1955.
- Muḥammad 'Alī Munshī, *Safarnāma-yi Rukn al-Daula ba Sarakhs*, 1299/1881–82, ed. Muḥammad Gulbun, Tehran 1356/1977.

- Muḥammad b. Aḥmad al-Muqaddasī, *Aḥsan al-taqāsīm fī maʿrifat al-aqālīm*, 4th/10th century,
 a) ed. Michael J. de Goeje, Leiden 1906; repr., Frankfurt 1992;
 b) ed. Muḥammad Makhzūm, Beirut 1987;
 c) English transl. Ranking 1989;
 d) English transl. Collins 2001.
- Muḥammad Faṭḥullāh b. Muḥammad Taqī Sāravī, *Tārīkh-i muḥammadī (Aḥsan al-tavārīkh)*, 1212/1797,
 a) British Museum;
 b) Ghulām Rizā Ṭabāṭabāʾī Majd, Tehran 1371/1992.
- Muḥammad Ḥasan b. Raḥīm Lanjānī Iṣfahānī, *Jannat al-akḥbār*, 1260–1268/1844–1852, partial ed. Mīr Hāshim Muḥaddith, Tehran 1391/2012.
- Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Iʿtimād al-Saltāna, *Mirʿāt al-buldān*, 1294–97/1877–80, ed. ʿAbd al-Ḥusain Navāʾī, Mīr Hāshim Muḥaddith, 4 vols., Tehran 1367/1988.
- Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Iʿtimād al-Saltāna, *Tārīkh-i muntazam-i nāshirī*, 1300/1883,
 a) Tehran 1300/1883;
 b) ed. Muḥammad Ismāʿīl Rizvānī, 3 vols., Tehran 1363–1367/1984–1988.
- Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān Iʿtimād al-Saltāna, *Maṭlaʿ al-shams*, 1301–1303/1884–1886, facsimile ed., Tehran 1976.
- Muḥammad Hāshim Āṣaf, Rustam al-Ḥukamā, *Rustam al-tavārīkh: salāṭīn-i silsilahā-yi ṣafavīya, afshārīya, zandīya va qājārīya*,
 a) German transl. Hoffmann 1986;
 b) ed. ʿAzīzullāh ʿAlizāda, Tehran 1382/2003.
- Muḥammad Ḥayāt Khān, *Ḥayāt-i afghānī*,
 a) English transl. H. Priestly 1981;
 b) Urdu transl., Lahore 1867.
- Muḥammad Ḥusain Khān b. Bairām ʿAlī Khān Qājār ʿIzz al-Dīnlū, “Narrative of the Travels of Haji Muhammed Hussein Khan, Prince of Merv, written in 1818,” in: Ouseley 1846: 332–51.
- Muḥammad Ibrāhīm b. Zain al-ʿĀbidīn Naṣīrī, *Dastūr-i shahriyārān sālahā-yi 1105 tā 1110 h.q.; pādshāhī-yi Shāh Sulṭān Ḥusain Ṣafavī*, 1105–1110/1694–1698,
 a) British Museum Ms. Or. 2941;
 b) ed. Muḥammad Nādir Naṣīrī Muqaddam, Tehran 1373/1994.
- Muḥammad Jaʿfar Khūrmūjī, *Tārīkh-i qājār. Ḥaqāyiq al-akḥbār-i nāshirī*, 1284/1867–68, ed. Ḥusain Khadīvjām, repr., Tehran 1363/1984 [1344/1965].
- Muḥammad Khalīl Marʿashī, *Majmaʿ al-tavārīkh dar tārīkh-i inqirāz-i ṣafavīya va vaqāyīʿ-i baʿd tā sāl-i 1207 hijrī qamarī*, 1207/1792,
 a) Universitätsbibliothek Tübingen, Depot der ehem. Preuß. Staatsbibliothek, MS. or. quart 220;
 b) Archives Library, Patiala;
 c) Lucknow: Mustafai Press, 1850;
 d) ed. ʿAbbās Iqbāl, Tehran 1328/1949; 1362/1983.
- Muḥammad b. Khāvandshāh b. Maḥmūd Mīr Khvānd, *Tārīkh-i rauzat al-ṣafā fī sirat al-anbiyāʾ va al-mulūk va al-khulafāʾ*, 8 vols., ca 899/1493,
 a) abridged ed., French transl. Jourdain 1813;
 b) partial English transl. Price 1821, Vol. 3;
 c) ed. ʿAbbās Parvīz, Tehran 1338/1959–60;
 d) ed. Jamshīd Kiyānfār, Tehran 1380/2001.
- Muḥammad Kāzīm Marvī, *Nāma-yi ʿālamārāy-i nādirī*, 1166/1752–53,
 a) MS. An SSSR, no. 430, Institut Vostokovedeniya, Leningrad;
 b) facsimile ed. N. D. Miklukho-Maklai and G. V. Shitov. 3 vols., Moscow: Izdatelʾstvo Akademia Nauk SSR, 1960–66 (Pamyatniki Literatury Narodov Vostoka. Teksty, Bolshaya Seriya, Bd. 13);
 c) ed. Muḥammad Amīn Riyāḥī, 3 vols., Tehran 1364/1985; 1369/1990.

- Muḥammad Ma'šūm b. Khvājagī Iṣfahānī, *Khulāṣat al-siyar tārikh-i rūzgār-i Shāh Ṣafā Ṣafavī*, 1638–1642,
 a) Kitābkhāna-yi Āstān-i Quds-i Raḡavī, Mashhad, Ms. No. 4228, 1660;
 b) Bayer. Staatsbibliothek, Munich Cod. pers. 231, 1664;
 c) Kitābkhāna-yi Millī, Tehran, Ms. No. 3905;
 d) Kitābkhāna-yi Majlis-i Shūrā-yi Millī;
 e) Public State Library St. Petersburg, Ms. Dorn No. 303;
 f) German transl. Rettelbach 1978;
 g) ed. Tehran 1368/1989.
- Muḥammad Miḥdī Astarābādī, *Tārikh-i jahāngushā-yi nādirī*, 1171/1757–58,
 a) Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, Suppl. 230;
 b) English transl. (1768) und French transl. (1771) Sir William Jones (s. Jones 1771);
 c) lithography, ed. Mīrzā Aḥmad Kāshānī, Bombay 1265/1848–49;
 d) lithography, Tabriz 1268/1851–52;
 e) lithography, ed. Mīr Sharīf Kitābfurūsh, Tehran 1311/1932;
 f) ed. Sayyid 'Abdullāh Anvār, Tehran 1341/1962;
 f) ed. Tehran 1368/1989;
 g) ed. 'Abd al-'Alī Barūmand, Tehran 1991.
- Muḥammad Miḥdī Astarābādī, *Durra-yi nādīra*,
 a) Bombay 1876–77;
 b) ed. Sayyid Ja'far Shahīdī, Tehran 1341/1962, 1366/1987.
- Muḥammad Muḥīd, *Mukhtaṣar-i Muḥīd*, 1091/1680–81,
 a) ed., commentary Seyfeddin Najmabadi, *Moḥṭaṣar-i Mofīd*, Vol. I, *Edition und Einleitung*, Vol II, *Kommentar und Indices*, Wiesbaden 1989, 1991;
 b) ed. Īraj Afshār, Tehran 1390/2011.
- Muḥammad Muḥsin Mustaufī, *Zubdat al-tavārīkh*, ca 1741–42,
 a) Cambridge University Library, E. G. Browne collection, MS. G15 (13);
 b) British Museum O.R. 3498;
 c) ed. Bīhrūz Gūdarzī, Tehran 1375/1996.
- Muḥammad Qāsim Hindūshāh Astarābādī Firīšta, *Tārikh-i Firīšta (Gulshan-i ibrahīmī)*, early seventeenth century, Lucknow 1864–65.
- Muḥammad Rizā Barnābādī, *Tadhkira*, 1815, ed., Russian transl., annot. Tumanovich 1983.
- Muḥammad Ṣādiq Mūsavī Iṣfahānī “Nāmī”, *Tārikh-i gūnūgushā*, ed. Sa'īd Nafīsī, Tehran 1317/1938, 1363/1984, 1366/1987, 1390/2011.
- Muḥammad Shafī' Ṭīhrānī “Vārid”, *Mīr'āt-i vāridāt (Tārikh-i suqūt-i ṣafavīyān, payāmadhā-yi ān va framānrvā'ī-yi Malik Maḥmūd Sīstānī)*, 1142/1730, partial ed. Maṣṣūr Ṣīfatgul, Tehran 1383/2004.
- Muḥammad Shafī' Ṭīhrānī “Vārid”, *Tārikh-i nādirshāhī—Nādirnāma*, 1156/1743–44, ed. Rizā Sha'bānī, Tehran 1349/1970.
- Muḥammad al-Ṭabāṭabā'ī al-Iṣfahānī, Sayyid, *Nasabnāma-yi afāghina va kaifiyat-i ḥukūmat-i ānhā*, 1224/1809–10. Royal Asiatic Society, London, No. 62.
- Muḥammad Ṭāhir Bisṭāmī, *Futūḥāt-i farīdūnīya (sharḥ-i janghā-yi Farīdūn Khān-i Charkas amīr al-umarā-yi Shāh 'Abbās-i avval)*, 1022/1613–14, ed. Sa'īd Muḥammad Ṣādiq, Muḥammad Nādir Naṣrī Muqaddam, Tehran 1380/2001.
- Muḥammad Ṭāhir Vaḥīd Qazvīnī (d. ca 1700), *Tārikh-i Shāh 'Abbās-i thānī*,
 a) ed. Ibrāhīm Dihgān, *Abbās-nāma, yā sharḥ-i زندگانī-yi 22 sāla-yi Shāh 'Abbās-i thānī (1052–1073/1642–1663)*, Arak 1329/1951;
 b) ed. Sayyid Sa'īd Mīr Muḥammad Ṣādiq, *Tārikh-i jahānārā-yi 'abbāsī (1015–1112 A.H.)*, Tehran 1383/2005.
- Muḥammad Taqī Khān Ḥakīm, *Ganj-i dānish*, 1305/1887–88, ed. Muḥammad 'Alī Ṣūfī, Tehran 1366/1987.

- Muḥammad Taqī Khān, Lisān al-Mulk, "Sipihr", *Nāsikh al-tavārīkh: Tārīkh-i qājārīya*, Tehran 1859–60,
 a) ed. Tabriz 1319/1901;
 b) ed. Tehran 1337/1958;
 c) ed. Bāqir Biḥbūdī, Tehran 1965;
 d) ed. Jamshīd Kiyānfār, 3 vols, Tehran 1377/1998.
- Muḥammad Taqī Khān Nūrī, *Ashraf al-tavārīkh*, 1231/1816, Vol. I, ed. Sūsan Aṣīlī, Tehran 1386/2007.
- Muḥammad Yār b. 'Arab Qaṭaghān, *Musakkhkhir al-bilād*, late 16th century, ed. Nādira Jalālī, Tehran 1385/2006.
- Muḥammad Yūsuf Riyāzī, *Kulliyāt-i riyāzī (Baḥr al-favāyid)*, 1906,
 a) Mashhad 1906;
 b) abridged ed. Fikrat 1990;
 c) partial transl. Patterson 1988.
- Muḥammad Yūsuf Vāla Iṣfahānī, *Khuld-i barīn. Īrān dar rūzgār-i Ṣafaviyān*, 1078/1667–68,
 a) British Museum NS Or. 3481;
 b) partial ed. Suhailī Khvānsarī, Tehran 1317/1938;
 c) ed. Mīr Hāshim Muḥaddith, Tehran 1372/1993, 2000;
 d) ed. Muḥammad Rizā Naṣīrī, Tehran 1382/2003.
- Mu'īn al-Dīn Muḥammad Zamchī Isfīzārī, *Rauzat al-jannāt fī auṣāf madīnat Harāt*, 897–899/1491–1493,
 a) ed. Sayyid Muḥammad Kāzīm Imām, 2 vols., Tehran 1338–9/1959–60;
 b) abridged French transl. Barbier de Meynard 1992.
- Nāṣir al-Dīn Shāh Qājār, *Safarnāma-yi Khurāsān*,
 a) lithography 1306/1888–89;
 b) ed. Tehran 1354/1975.
- Naurūz 'Alī b. Muḥammad Bāqir Fāzil-i Bisṭāmī (1227–1309/1812–1892), *Firdaus al-tavārīkh*, ed. 'Alī Rizā Akramī, Tehran 1390/2011.
- Ni'matullāh Haravī, *Makhzan-i afghānī*, 1018–20/1609–11,
 a) British Library;
 b) Cambridge, Add 753;
 c) Royal Asiatic Society, Bengal, D 282;
 d) English translation Dorn 1976.
- Nizām al-Dīn Shāmī, *Ẓafarnāma*, 806/1403–04, ed. Tauer 1937.
- Nūr Muḥammad Nūrī, *Gulshan-i imārat* (ca 1870), ed. Aḥmad 'Alī Kuhzād, Kabul 1956.
- Nūrullāh b. Muḥammad Ḥusain Iṣfahānī, *Ziyārat-i maqām-i iftikhāriyya-yi shī'a-yi ithnā 'asharī*, 1326/1908, transl. Percy Sykes/Khan Bahadur Ahmad Khan (1910)
- Qāsim b. Yūsuf Abū Naṣrī Haravī, *Irshād al-zirā'a*, 921/1515,
 a) ed. 'Abd al-Ghaffār Najm al-Daula, Tehran 1904–5;
 b) ed. Muḥammad Mushīrī, Tehran 1346/1967–68, 2536/1977.
- Qāsim b. Yūsuf Abū Naṣrī Haravī, *Risāla-yi tarīq-i qismat-i āb-i qulb*, ed. Māyil Haravī, Tehran 1347/1968.
- Risāla dar nasab-i Afāghina*, Asiatic Society, Bengal, Ms. No. D174.
- Rizā Qulī Khān Hidāyat, *Mulḥaqāt-i tārīkh-i rauzat al-ṣafā-yi nāṣirī*, vols. 8–10,
 a) Tehran 1853–1856;
 b) Qum 1339/1960.
- Rizā Qulī Khān Hidāyat, *Sifāratnāma-yi Khvārazm*, 1292/1875–76,
 a) ed., French. transl. Charles Schefer 1975;
 b) ed. 'Alī Ḥusūrī, Tehran 1356/1977.
- Safarnāma-yi Ḥamza Mīrzā (Sharḥ-i lashkarkashī-yi 1276 h. q. [1859–60] az zabān-i yak shāhid-i 'ainī)*, ed. Muḥsin Raḥmatī, Tehran 1387/2008.

- Saif b. Muḥammad b. Ya'qūb Saifī Haravī, *Tārīkh-nāma-yi Harāt*, written between 1318–1322,
 a) ed. Muḥammad Zubair al-Ṣiddīqī, Calcutta 1362/1943, repr. Tehran 1973;
 b) ed. Ghulām Rizā Ṭabāṭabā'ī Majd, Tehran 1383/2004, 1385/2006;
 b) abridged ed. Fikrat 1381/2002.
- Shāh Shujā', *Vāqi'āt-i Shāh Shujā'*, ca 1842,
 a) ed. Aḥmad 'Alī Kūhzad, Kabul 1333/1954;
 b) German transl. Zimmermann 1842.
- Sharaf al-Dīn 'Alī Yazdī, *Ẓafarnāma*, 832/1424–25,
 a) ed. M. 'Abbāsī, 2 vols., Tehran 1336/1957;
 b) ed. A. Urumbaev, Tashkent, 1972.
- Shīr Muḥammad Khān, *Tavārīkh-i khurshīd-i jahān*,
 a) Lahore, 1311/1894;
 b) Peshawar, date?
- Sulṭān Muḥammad b. Mūsā Durrānī, *Tārīkh-i sulṭānī*. Bombay, 1298/1880.
- Ṭahmāsp b. Isma'īl Ṣafavī, *Tadhkira-yi Shāh Ṭahmāsp*,
 a) ed. Philott 1912;
 b) German transl. Horn 1891.
- Valī Qulī b. Dāvūd Qulī Shāmlū, *Qiṣaṣ al-khāqānī*, ca 1666, ed. Ḥasan Sādāt Nāṣirī, 2 vols., Tehran 1371–1374/1992–1995.
- Yaḥyā b. 'Abd al-Laṭīf Qazvīnī, *Kitāb-i Lubb al-tavārīkh*, 1542, facsimile ed. Tehran 1363/1984.
- Ya'qūb 'Alī Khvāfī, *Pādshāhān-i muta'akhhir-i Afghānistān*, 1907,
 a) 2 vols., Kabul 1957;
 b) ed. Peshawar 1377/1998.
- Zain al-'Ābidīn 'Alī 'Abdī Bēg Shīrāzī (1515–1581), *Jannat al-athmār*, 1557–1560, ed. Abū al-Faḍl Ḥāshim Ūghlī Raḥīmuf, Moscow 1979.
- Zain al-'Ābidīn 'Alī 'Abdī Bēg Shīrāzī (1515–1581), *Takmilat al-akhbār (Tārīkh-i safavīya az āghāz tā 978 hijrī qamarī [1570–71])*, ed. 'Abd al-Ḥusain Navā'ī, Tehran 1369/1990.
- Zain al-'Ābidīn Marāgha'ī Ibrāhīm Bēg, *Siyāhatnāma-yi Ibrāhīm Bēg*,
 a) ed. Muḥammad Kāzīm Shīrāzī, Calcutta 1910, Bombay 1324/1906–7;
 b) ed. Tehran 1975;
 c) ed. M. 'A. Sīpanlū, Tehran 1364/1985;
 d) German transl. Schulz 1903.
- Zain al-'Ābidīn Shīrvānī, *Riyāz al-siyāha*, 1237/1822, ed. Aṣghar Ḥamid Rabbānī, Tehran 1339/1960, 1361/1982.
- Zain al-Dīn Maḥmūd Vāṣifī, *Badāyi' al-vaqāyi'*, 1538–39,
 a) ed. Alexander N. Boldyrev, Moscow 1961;
 b) ed. Alexander N. Boldyrev, Tehran 1970.

PUBLISHED PERSIAN ARCHIVAL SOURCES

- Afshār "Sīstānī", Īraj (1970), "Shaṣt-u chahār sanad dar bāra-yi vaqāyi'-i Harāt," in: *Bar-rasīhā-yi tārikhī* 5,2: 135–180; 5,3: 288–359.
- Iṣfahānīan, Karīm/Raushanī Za'farānlū, Qudratullāh (eds.) (1967), *Majmu'a-yi asnād va madārik-i Farrukh Khān Amīn al-Daula*, 2 vols. Tehran: Ganjīna-yi Taḥqīqāt-i Īrānī.
- Jamālẓāda, Muḥammad 'Alī (1964), "Yak sanad-i tārikhī dar bāra-yi Sīstān," in: *Sukhan* 15,2: 199–203.
- Malcolm, John (1811), "Translations of Two Letters of Nadir Shah," in: *Asiatic Researches* 10: 526–47.
- Muqaddam, Muḥammad Nādir Nāṣirī (ed.) (1374/1995), *Guzīda-yi asnād-i siyāsī-yi Īrān va Afghānistān*. Tehran: Daftar-i Muṭāla'āt-i Siyāsī-yi Bain al-Milālī.
- Navā'ī, 'Abd al-Ḥusain (1341/1962), *Asnād va mukātibāt-i tārikhī-yi Īrān az Tīmūr ta Shāh Ismā'īl*. Tehran: Bungāh-i Tarjuma va Nashr-i Kitāb.

- Navā'ī, 'Abd al-Ḥusain (1352/1973), *Shāh 'Abbās: Majmū'a-yi asnād va mukātibāt-i tārikhī*. 3 vols. Tehran: Bunyād-i Farhang-i Īrān.
- Navā'ī, 'Abd al-Ḥusain (1368/1989), *Nādir Shāh va bāzmādagānash, hamrāh bā nāmāhā-yi salṭanatī va asnād-i siyāsī va idārī*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Zamīn.
- Pārsā-yi Quds, Aḥmad (1977), "Sanadī marbūṭ ba fa'āliyathā-yi hunarī-yi daura-yi tīmūrī dar kitābkhāna-yi bāisunghurī-yi Harāt," in: *Hunar va Mardum* 175: 42–50.
- Riazul Islam (1971), *The Shamlu Letters. A New Source of Iranian Diplomatic Correspondence*. Karachi: Institute of Central and West Asian Studies.
- Riazul Islam (1979, 1982), *A Calendar of Documents on Indo-Persian Relations (1500–1750)*. 2 vols. Tehran/Karachi: Iranian Culture Foundation.
- Ṣafā'ī, Ibrāhīm (1346/1967), *Asnād-i siyāsī-yi daurān-i qājārīya*. N.p.
- Saljūqī, Fikrī (1964a), "Sanad-i Mu'īn al-Dīn Isfizārī dar bāra-yi tārikh-i 'umrān-i masjid-i jāmi'-i Harāt," in: *Āryānā* 22,9–10: 1–5.
- Schneider, Irene (2007) *The Petitioning System in Iran: State, Society and Power Relations in the Late 19th Century*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Shahshahānī, Sayyid Ḥusain (1337/1958), "Farmān-i tārikhī-yi Aḥmad Shāh Durrānī, muvarrahkh 16 shavvāl al-mukarram 1167," in: *Farhang-i Īrān Zamīn* 6: 159–63.
- Sutūda, Manūchīhr (ed.) (1354/1975–1380/2001), *Az Āstārā tā Astarābād*, vols. 6–9. Tehran: Anjuman-i Āthār-i Millī.

BRITISH ARCHIVAL SOURCES

- Cabinet Papers (1834–39), *Correspondence and Political Papers Relating to Persia and Affghanistan*, India Office Library, L/PS/20/A7/1.
- Cabinet Papers (1841), *Correspondence Relating to Herat*, India Office Library, L/PS/20/G 10/3.
- Conolly, A; Trevelyan, C.E. (1831), *Papers respecting Affghanistan and the Country between the Indus and the Caspian*, India Office Library, L/PS/19/26.
- Correspondence respecting the Demarcation of the N.W. Frontier of Afghanistan from the Hari Rud to the Oxus, 1884–86*, India Office Library, 6 vols., L/PS/18/A53.
- Curzon, G. N. (1899), *Maintenance of British Influence in Persia, Letter to Her Majesty's Secretary of State of India*, Simla, 21 September 1899, India Office Library L/PS/ Letters from India 1899, vol. 116, No. 927.
- Curzon Papers (1884–86), *Papers on the Afghan Boundary Commission*, 7 vols., India Office Library, MSS Eur., F. 111/60.
- Daud Khan (1873), *An Account of Daud Khan's visit to Afghanistan and Khorasan etc.*, Simla: Government Central Branch, India Office Library, L/PS/5/274 No. 90 of 26 December 1873.
- Durand, H. M. (1899), *Despatch from Sir M. Durand respecting Appointment of Additional Consular Officers in Persia*, Tehran, 12 December 1899, India Office Library L/PS/18 C 97.
- Girdlestone, Charles (1869), *Note on the Relations of Seistan with Afghanistan and Persia*, Parliamentary Papers No. 384. *Goldsmid Collection*, MSS Eur F 134/8.
- Gore, St. G. (1886), *Notes on Sub-Surveyor Imam Sharīf's second trip into the Taimani country and to Farah*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/47, 955–62.
- Griesbach, C.L. (1887), *Afghan Field Notes, 3rd Series, Geological Survey of N.W. Afghanistan*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/49, 1–35.
- Hira Singh/Maitland, J.P. (1886), *Account given by Hira Singh of his Tour in the Firozkohi Country*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/47, 49–63.
- Hussain, Muḥammad (1886), *Report on the Hazarajat by Subedar Muḥammad Hussain, Afghan Boundary Commission*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/47, 415–437.
- Logan, Dr.; Todd, D'Arcy (1839), *Statement on the Condition of the Poor at Herat*, India Office Library, L/PS/5/145 No. 7, Encl. 8. *Memorandum and Papers regarding the Creation of Trade Monopolies by the Amir of Afghanistan, 1894–95*, India Office Library, 16 October 1895, L/PS/7/83, No. 202.
- Memorandum on the Northern Boundaries of Affghanistan*, 1869, India Office Library, L/PS/5/263, 71–7.
- Merk, W. (1886), *Diary of March from Helmand via Western Seistan and along Border of Eastern Persia to Herat Valley, and hence to Char Shamba, Camp of Afghan Boundary Commission*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/47, 151–160.
- Molloy, E. (1883), *Report on Herat*, National Archives of India, For. A–Pol–E September 1883 No. 317.
- Napier, G. C. (1875), *Memorandum on the Condition, Resources, etc. of the Perso-Afghan Border with some Notes on the Herat Territory*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/4, part 1, 217–53.
- Persia and the Persian Gulf Records*, India Office Library, Vols. 1–4, 14–15.
- Pottinger, Eldred (1839), *Memoir on the Country between Herat and Kabul, the Paropamisian Mountains and the River Amoo*, India Office Library, L/PS/5/145 No. 7, Enc. 20.
- Raverty, H.G. (1902), *The History of Hiri or Herat, and its Dependencies*, India Office Library, 7 vols, MSS. Eur. C. 83–89.
- "Route from Meshed to Cabul by Herat and Candahar" (1830), LPS/19/59.

- Routes in Afghanistan* (1941) Vol. III, North West, with map by General Staff, India 1907, amended to 1940, Lahore 1941, India Office Library, L/PS/20 B. 223.
- Sanders, Edward (1840), *Report on the Fortifications of Herat*, India Office Library P/43, No. 51; printed in part by MacGregor C. M. (1995 [1871]), *Central Asia, Part II: A Contribution towards the Better Knowledge of th Topography, Ethnology, Resources, & History of Afghanistan*, 349–371.
- Statement Regarding the Recent Political Status of Maimena and the Petty Fiefs between Balkh and the Oxus and Budukhshan*, 1872, India Office Library, L/PS/5/270, 191–6.
- St. John, O (1879), *Report on the Revenue and Expenditure of the Provincial Government of Kandahar*, National Archives of India, For. S. S. June 1876 Nos. 83–85.
- Stewart, Charles E. (1883), *The Aimak Tribes*, India Office Library, L/PS/18/A53 Pt. 1, 1–79.
- Strachey, Richard, *Memoir Chiefly on the Revenue and Trade of the Kingdom of Caubul*, Elphinstone Collection, India Office Library, F 88 13 Hn.
- Takki Khan, Mirzā Muḥammad (1885), *Report on the City and Province of Herat*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/49, 1175–1270.
- Taylor, R. L. (1858a), *A Tabular Statement of the Tribes Adjoining the Neighbourhood of Herat*, India Office Library, L/PS/5/253, 854–5.
- Taylor, R. L. (1858b), *Memorandum on Meimeneh* 1 February 1858, India Office Library, L/PS/5/253, 865–71.
- Taylor, R. L. (1858c), *Narrative of Events at Herat from the Death of Yar Muḥammad Khan to the Present Time*, India Office Library, L/PS/5/253, 931–50.
- Todd, D'Arcy (1839), *Report on the Results of Observations and Enquiries upon the State of Herat*, 2 October 1839, India Office Library, L/PS/5/144, 420–465.
- Todd, D'Arcy (1840), *Translation of a Paper Given by Hukoomut Khan, Eldest Son of the Vali of Mymuna to the Vuzeer of Herat*, Yar Mohamed Khan, India Office Library L/PS/5/155, No. 4 encl. 10.
- Watson, R (1864), *The Boundaries of Persia*, India Office Library, 15 December 1864, L/PS/9/167 No. 1 of 1865.
- Wynne, H. Le Poer (1870a), *History of Seistan and Lash-Jowain*, India Office Library, L/PS/5/265, 21–101.
- Wynne, H. Le Poer. (1870b), *Disputes as to the Sovereignty of Seistan and Lash-Jowein*, India Office Library, L/PS/18 C 65.
- Yate, Charles E. (1885), *Report on the City of Herat*, India Office Library, L/PS/7/49, 1163–74.
- Yate, Charles E. (1887a), “Report on the Firozkohis,” National Archives of India, For. Sec. F. Feb. 1887 No. 478.
- Yate, Charles E. (1893), *Notes on the Fortifications and Troops of Herat, Badghis and Northern Afghanistan*, India Office Library, 25 May 1893, L/PS/7/70, 1787–94.

SECONDARY SOURCES

- Abbott, James (1843), *Narrative of a Journey from Heraut to Khiva, Moscow and St. Petersburg*. 2 vols. London: H. Allen.
- Abu-Lughod, Janet L. (1989), *Before European Hegemony. The World System A.D. 1250–1350*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Adamec, Ludwig (1972–1985), *Historical and Political Gazetteer of Afghanistan*. 6 vols. Graz: Akademische Verlags- und Druckanstalt.
- Adamec, Ludwig (1976–1989), *Historical Gazetteer of Iran*, 4 vols. Graz: Akademische Druck- u. Verlagsanstalt.
- Adamec, Ludwig (1975), *Who's Who of Afghanistan*. Graz: Akademische Verlags- und Druckanstalt.
- Adamec, Ludwig W. (1995), *Les Dourranis aux 18e et 19e siecles*. Paris: Ceredaf.
- Ādamiyat, Farīdūn (1361/1982), *Amīr-i Kabīr va Īrān*. 6th edition. Tehran: Shirkat-i Sihāmī-yi Intishārāt-i Khvārazmī.
- Ādamiyat, Farīdūn/Nāṭīq, Humā (1356/1977), *Afkār-i ijtimā'ī va siyāsī-i va iqtisādī dar āthār muntashir nashuda-yi daurān-i qājār*. Tehran: Āgāh.
- Adle, Chahryar (1976), “Fotuhāt-i homayun: ‘Les Victoires augustes,’ 1007/1598,” Ph.D. diss., University of Paris.
- Adshad, S. A. M. (1993), *Central Asia in World History*. London: Macmillan.
- Afshār “Sīstānī,” Īraj (1363/1984), *Nigāhī ba Sīstān va Balūchistān*. Tehran: Amīn Haẓra'ī.
- Afshār “Sīstānī,” Īraj (1366/1987), *Muqaddama'ī bar shinākht-i ṭavāyif-i Sargulzāyī va Bārakzāyī*. Tehran: Nashr-i Hunar.
- Afshār “Sīstānī,” Īraj (1367/1988), *Buzurgān-i Sīstān*. Tehran: Nashr-i Murgh-i Āmīn.
- Afshār “Sīstānī,” Īraj (1370/1991), *Ashāyir va ṭavāyif-i Sīstān va Balūchistān*. Tehran: Nasl-i Dānish.
- Afshār “Sīstānī,” Īraj (1378/1999), *Shinākht-i ustān-i Khurāsān*. Tehran: Hīrmand.
- Afshār, Maḥmūd (1355/1976), “Khurāsān—Afghānistān—Īrān,” in: *Gauhar*: 221–6.
- Aigle, Denise (2000), “Les transformations d'un mythe d'origine: L'exemple de Gengis Khan et de Tamerlan,” in: *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* 89–90: 151–68.
- Aitchison, C. U. (1983 [1929]), *A Collection of Treaties, Engagements and Sanads relating to India and Neighbouring Countries*. Vol. 13: *Persia and Afghanistan*. Delhi: Mittal Publications.
- Akhmedov, B. A. (transl.) (1977), *More tain otnositel'no doblestei blagorodnikh (geografia)*, by Mahmud b. Valī. Tashkent.

- Alam, Ishrat (2002), "Cotton Technology in India down to the Sixteenth Century," in: *History of Science, Philosophy and Culture of Indian Civilization*. Vol. 3,2. *India's Interaction with China, Central and West Asia*, edited by A. Rahman. New Delhi: Oxford University Press: 445–63.
- Alam, Muzaffar (1994), "Trade, State, Policy and Regional Change: Aspects of Mughal-Uzbek Commercial Relations, c. 1550–1750," in: *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient* 37,3: 202–227.
- Alam, Muzaffar/Subrahmanyam, Sanjay (2007), *Indo-Persian Travels in the Ages of Discoveries 1400–1800*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Alder, G. J. (1974), "The Key to India?: Britain and the Herat Problem 1830–1863 –Part 1," in: *Middle Eastern Studies* 10,2: 186–209.
- Algar, Hamid (1976), "Silent and vocal *dhikr* in the Naqshbandī Order," in: *Akten des VII. Kongresses für Arabistik und Islamwissenschaft*, edited by Albert Dietrich. Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht: 39–46.
- Algar, Hamid (1990), "A Brief History of the Naqshbandī Order," in: *Naqshbandis: Historical Developments and Present Situation of a Muslim Mystical Order*, edited by Marc Gaborieau, Alexandre Popovic, Thierry Zarcone. Istanbul: ISIS: 3–44.
- Allchin, Frank R./Hammond, Norman (1978), *The Archaeology of Afghanistan from Earliest Time to the Timurid Period*. London: Acad. Pr.
- Allen, Terry (1981), *A Catalogue of the Toponyms and Monuments of Timurid Herat*, Cambridge, Mass.: Agha Khan Program for Islamic Architecture at Harvard University and the Massachusetts Institute for Technology.
- Allen, Terry (1983), *Timurid Herat*. Wiesbaden: Dr. Ludwig Reichert Verlag.
- Almgren, B. (1962), "Geographical Aspects of the Silk Road, especially in Persia and East Turkestan," in: *Bulletin Östasiatiska Museet* 34: 93–106.
- Amanat, Abbas (1997), *Pivot of the Universe: Nasir al-Din Shah Qajar and the Iranian Monarchy, 1831–1896*. Berkeley: U. C. Press.
- Amanat, Abbas (ed.) (1983), *Cities and Trade. Consul Abbot on the Economy and Society of Iran 1847–1866*. London: Ithaca Press.
- Amitai-Preiss, Reuven (1999), "Northern Syria between Mongols and Mamluks: Political Boundary, Military Frontier, and Ethnic Affinities," in: *Frontiers in Question*, edited by Daniel Power and Naomi Standen. London: Macmillan Press: 128–52.
- Ando, Shiro (1992), *Timuridische Emire nach dem Mu'izz al-Ansab: Untersuchungen zur Stammesaristokratie Zentralasiens im 14. und 15. Jahrhundert*. Berlin: K. Schwarz.
- Andrews, Peter Alford (1978), "The Tents of Timur: An Examination of reports on the Quriltay at Samarqand, 1404," in: *Art of the European Steppelands*, edited by P. Denwood. London: 143–81.
- Andrews, Peter Alford (1997), *Nomad Tent Types in the Middle East*. Wiesbaden: Peter Reichelt.
- Andrews, Peter Alford (1999), *Felt Tents and Pavilions. The Nomadic Tradition and Its Interaction with Princely Tentage II*. London: Melisende.
- Annenkow, M. (1881), "Die Achal-Tekke-Oase und die Kommunikationswege nach Indien," in: *Russische Revue* 18: 518–41, 19: 30–61.
- Anṣārī, Fārūq (1383/2004), *Harāt. Shahr-i Āryā*. Tehran: Vizārat-i Umūr-i Khārija.
- Artamonov, L. K. (1895), *Geratskaia provintsia*. Ashkabad.
- Arunova, M. R. (1960a), "The Herat Rising of 1716–32," in: *Central Asian Review* 8.
- Arunova, M. R. (1960b), "Firmans under Nadir Shah Afshar (1736–1747) as a Source for Historic Studies," in: *XXV International Congress of Orientalists*. Moscow: Oriental Literature Publishing House.
- Arunova, M. R., K. Z. Ashrafyan (1958) *Gosudarstvo Nadir Shakh Afshara*. Moscow: Akademia Nauk SSR.
- "Āṣaf al-Daula," *Dāyirat al-ma'ārif-i buzurg-i islāmī*. I: 422–3.
- Ashraf, A./Hekmat, H. (1981), "Merchants and Artisans and the Developmental Processes of Nineteenth-Century Iran," in: *The Islamic Middle East, 700–1900*, edited by A. L. Udovitch. Princeton: Darwin Press.
- Athar Ali, M. (1985), *The Apparatus of Empire. Awards of Ranks, Offices and Titles to the Mughal Nobility*. Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Aubin, Jean (1959), "Sāh Ismā'īl et les notables de l'Iraq Persan," in: *Etudes safavides I. The Journal of Economic and Social History of the Orient* 2,1: 37–81.
- Aubin, Jean (1963), "Comment Tamerlan prenait les villes," in: *Studia Islamica* 19:83–122.
- Aubin, Jean (1967), "Un santan quhistānī de l'époque timouride," in: *Revue des études islamiques* 35: 185–216.
- Aubin, Jean (1969), "L'ethnogénèse des Qaraunas," in: *Turcica* I: 65–94.
- Aubin, Jean (1970a), "Elements pour l'étude des agglomérations urbaines dans l'Iran médiéval," in: *The Islamic City. A Colloquium*, edited by A.H. Hourani and S.M. Stern. Oxford: Bruno Cassirer: 65–76.
- Aubin, Jean (1970b), "La politique religieuse des Safavides," in: *Le Shī'isme Imāmīte*. Colloque des Strasbourg 6–9 mai 1968. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France: 235–44.
- Aubin, Jean (1971), "Réseau pastoral et réseau caravanier, les grand routes du Khorasan à l'époque mongole," in: *Le Monde Iranien et l'Islam* 1: 105–30.
- Aubin, Jean (1976), "Le Khanat de Cagatai et le Khorassan (1334–1380)," in: *Turcica* 8,2: 16–60.
- Aubin, Jean (1984), "Révolution chiite et conservatisme. Les soufis de Lāhejān, 1500–1514," in: *Etudes Safavides II. Moyen Orient & Océan Indien* 1: 1–40.
- Aubin, Jean (1986), "Chiffres de population urbaine en Iran occidental autour de 1500," in: *Moyen Orient et Océan Indien* 3: 37–54.

- Aubin, Jean (1988), "L'avènement des Safavides reconsideré," in: *Etudes safavides II, Moyen Orient et Océan Indien* 5: 1–130.
- Avery, Peter (1991), "Nadir Shah and the Afsharid Legacy," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 7, *From Nadir Shah to the Islamic Republic*, edited by Peter Avery, Gavin Hambly and Charles Melville. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 3–62.
- Axworthy, Michael (2006), *The Sword of Persia. Nader Shah: From Tribal Warrior to Conquering Tyrant*. London: I.B. Tauris.
- Babaie, Sussan/Babayan, Kathryn/Baghdiantz-McCabe/Farhad, Massumeh (2004), *Slaves of the Shah. New Elites of Safavid Iran*. London/New York: I.B. Tauris.
- Babayan, Kathryn (1993), "The Waning of the Qizilbash: The Temporal and the Spiritual in Seventeenth Century Iran," Ph.D. diss., Princeton.
- Baião, António (1923), *Itinerários da Índia a Portugal por terra, revistos e preficiados por António Baião*. Coimbra: Impr. da Univ.
- Baker, Valentine (1876), *Clouds in the East: Travels and Adventures on the Perso-Turkoman Frontier*. London: Chatto and Windus.
- Ball, Warwick (1981), "The Remains of a Monumental Timurid Garden outside Herat." In: *East and West* 31: 79–82.
- Ball, Warwick (1982), *Archaeological Gazetteer of Afghanistan*. Paris: Editions Recherche sur les civilisations.
- Ball, Warwick & Leonard Harrow (eds.) (2002), *Cairo to Kabul. Afghan and Islamic Studies*. London: Melisende, 2002.
- Balland, D. (1973), "Le coton en Afghanistan. Essai d'analyse géographique et économique d'une culture industrielle dans un pays sous-industrialisé," in: *Revue Géographique de l'Est*. 13,1–2: 17–75.
- Bāmdād, Mihdī (1371/1992), *Sharḥ-i ḥāl-i rijāl-i Īrān dar qarnhā-yi 12 va 13 va 14*. 6 vols. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Zauvār.
- Banani, A. (1978), "Reflections on the Social and Economic Structure of Safavid Persia at Its Zenith," in: *Iranian Studies* 11: 83–116.
- Barbier de Meynard, Casimir (1992 [1860–1862]), "Extraits de la chronique persane d'Herat," in: *Journal Asiatique*, 5. Série, 16 (1860): 461–520; 17 (1861): 473–522; 20 (1862): 268–319.
- Barbier de Meynard, Casimir (transl.) (1970 [1861]), *Dictionnaire géographique, historique et littéraire de la Perse et des contrées adjacentes. Extrait en traduction française, avec quelques textes originaux, du Mo'djem el-Bouldân, Dictionnaire des Pays, de B. Abdallah el-Roumi el-Hamawi Yaqout, 1179–1229 A.D.* Repr. Amsterdam: Philo Press.
- Barto'ld, V. V. (1919), "O nekotorykh vostochnykh rukopisiakh," in: *Izvestiia Rossiiskoi Akademii nauk*, ser. VI, XIII: 923–30.
- Barto'ld, V. V. (1935), *12 Vorlesungen über die Geschichte der Türken Mittelasiens*. Berlin: Deutsche Gesellschaft für Islamkunde.
- Barto'ld, V. V. (1938), *Herat unter Hosain Baiqara dem Timuriden*, translated by Walter Hinz, in: *Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 22/8. Leipzig: Deutsche Morgenländische Gesellschaft.
- Barto'ld, V. V. (1956–1962), *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*. Vol. I, *A Short History of Turkistan*; Vol. II, *Ulugh-Beg*; Vol. III, *Mīr 'Alī-Shīr*, Vol. IV, *A History of the Turkman People*. Translated from the Russian by V. Minorsky and T. Minorsky. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Barto'ld, V. V. (1968), *Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion*. London: Luzac & Co.
- Barto'ld, V. V. (1984), *An Historical Geography of Iran*, translated by Svat Soucek, edited by C. E. Bosworth. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.
- Basiner, Theodor Friedrich Jul. (1848), *Naturwissenschaftliche Reise durch die Kirgisensteppes nach Chiwa*. St. Petersburg: Kaiserl. Academie der Wissenschaften.
- Bāstāni-Pārīzī, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (1969a), "Dād ū sitad dar daura-yi ṣafavī," in: *Bar-rasīhā-yi tārikhī* 4,2/3: 193–210.
- Bāstāni-Pārīzī, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (1969b), *Siyāsāt va iqtisād-i 'aṣr-i ṣafavī*. Tehran.
- Bayāt, 'Azīzullāh (1367/1988), *Kullīyāt-i juḡhrāfiyā-yi ṭabī'ī va tārikhī-yi Īrān*. Tehran: Amīr Kabīr.
- Bayāt, Kāva (1370/1991), *Ṣaulat al-Salṭana Hazāra: shūrish-i Khurāsān dar zimistān-i 1320 sh.* Tehran: Intishārāt-i Bīnīsh.
- Bayat, Mangol (1982), *Mysticism and Dissent. Socioreligious Thought in Qajar Iran*. Syracuse, N.Y.: Syracuse University Press.
- Bayly, Chris (2004), *The Birth of the Modern World*. Malden: Blackwell.
- Beck, Lois (1990), "Tribes and the State in Nineteenth- and Twentieth-Century Iran," in: *Tribes and State Formation in the Middle East*, edited by Philip S. Khoury and Joseph Kostiner. Berkeley: University of California Press: 185–225.
- Begdilī, Bīzhan (1978), "Bābā 'Alī. Sharḥ-i ḥāl-i chand tan az rijāl-i daura-yi afshārīya," in: *Yaghmā* 31,10: 619–621.
- Belenetskii, A. M. (1941), "K istorii feodal'nogo zemlevladieniia v Srednei Azii i Irane v timuridskuiu epokhu (XIV–XV vv): Obrazovanie instituta 'siyural'," in: *Istorik-marksist* 4: 43–58.
- Belenetskii, A. M. (1946), "Istoricheskaia topografiia Gerata XV v.," in: *Alisher Navoi, sbornik statei pod redaktsiei A. K. Borovkova*. Moscow: 175–202.
- Belenetskii, A. M., Bentovic, I. B., Bolsakov, O. G. (eds.) (1973), *Srednevekovyi gorod Srednei Azii*. Leningrad.
- Belfour, F. C. (transl.) (1831), *The Life of Shaikh Mohammed Ali Hazin*. London: Murray.
- Belfour, F. C. (ed.) (1831), *The Life of Shaikh Mohammed Ali Hazin*. London: Oriental Translation Fund.
- Bellew, Henry Walter (1873), *Record of the March of the Mission to Seistan*. Calcutta.
- Bellew, Henry Walter (1874), *From the Indus to the Tigris. A Narrative of a Journey through the Countries of Balochistan, Afghanistan, Khorassan, and Iran in 1872*. London: Trübner & Co.
- Bellew, Henry Walter (1891), "Introductory Remarks to an Inquiry into the Ethnography of Afghanistan," in: *The Asiatic Quarterly Review*, N.S. 2: 261–87.
- "Bemerkungen über Transkaspien und die benachbarten Landstriche, nach dem russischen Text: (1) Straßen von Asschabad nach Herat; (2) Reise nach Persien, Südturkmenien, Merv und Tschardschui," in: *Petermanns Geographische Mitteilungen* 30 (1884): 281–296.
- Benawa, Abdul Rauf (1954), "Dawar ou Zamine Dawar," in: *Afghanistan* 9,3: 26–29.

- Benjamin, Samuel G. (1887), *Persia and the Persians*. London: Murray.
- Bennigsen, A/Lemerrier-Quelquejail, Ch. (1976), "La Grande Horde Nogay et le problème des communications entre l'Empire Ottoman et l'Asie Centrale en 1552–1556," in: *Turcica* 8,2: 203–36.
- Bernier, Francois (1891), *Travels in the Mogul Empire, AD 1656–1668*, translated by Irving Brock and edited by Archibald Constable. Westminster: Archibald Constable.
- Bīnā, 'Alī Akbar (1348/1969), "Janbahā-yi siyāsī va dīplūmāsī-yi mas'ala-i Harāt va Afghānistān," in: *Bar-rasīhā-yi tārikhī* 4,1: 60–86.
- Binning, Robert B. M. (1857), *A Journal of Two Years' Travel in Persia, Ceylon etc.* London: W. H. Allen.
- Blake, Stephen (2003), "Shah 'Abbas and the Transfer of the Safavid Capital from Qazvin to Isfahan," in: *Society and Culture in the Early Modern Middle East: Studies on Iran in the Safavid Period*, edited by Andrew J. Newman. Leiden: Brill: 145–64.
- Blaramberg, I. F. (1841), *Statisticheskoe obozrenie Persii, sostawlennoe podpolkovnikom I. F. Blarambergom v 1841 godu*. No Place.
- Bobek, Hans (1951), *Die natürlichen Wälder und Gehölzfluren Irans, Bonner Geographische Abhandlungen* 8. Bonn: Geographisches Institut der Universität Bonn.
- de Bode, C. A. (1980), "The Yamud and Goklan Tribes of Turkomania," in: *Turkoman Studies I*, edited by Robert Pinner & Michael Francis, London: Oguz Press: 46–56.
- Bonin, C. E. (1898), "Les grandes voies commerciales de l'Asie centrale," in: *Bulletin de la Société de géographie commerciale de Paris* 19: 801–6.
- Bookwalter, J. W., "Among the Turkomans," in: *Turkoman Studies I*, edited by Robert Pinner & Michael Francis, London: Oguz Press: 63–9.
- Bos, Matthijs van den (2002), *Mystic Regimes. Sufism and the State in Iran from the late Qajar Era to the Islamic Republic*. Leiden: Brill.
- Bosworth, C. E. (1961), "The Early Islamic History of Ghūr," in: *Central Asiatic Journal* 6: 116–33.
- Bosworth, C. E. (1968), "The Political and Dynastic History of the Iranian World (A.D. 1000–1217)," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 5, *The Saljuq and Mongol Periods*, edited by J. A. Boyle. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1–202.
- Bosworth, Edmund/Hillenbrand, Carole (eds.) (1983), *Qajar Iran. Political, Social and Cultural Change 1800–1925. Studies Presented to Professor L. P. Elwell-Sutton*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
- Bourne, Kenneth/Watt, D. Cameron (eds.) (1984), *British Documents on Foreign Affairs, Part I, Series B, The Near and Middle East, Persia, 1856–1885*. Bethesda, Md: University Publications of America.
- Boyle, John A. (transl.) (1958), *The History of the World-Conqueror by 'Ala ad-Din 'Ata-Malik Juvaini*, translated from the text of Mirza Muhammad Qazvini, 2 vols. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Boyle, John A. (1968), "Dynastic and Political History of the Il-Khans," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 5, *The Saljuq and Mongol Periods*, edited by J.A. Boyle. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 303–421.
- Brandenburg, Dietrich (1977), *Herat: Eine timuridische Hauptstadt*. Graz: Akademische Druck- und Verlagsanstalt.
- Brauer, Ralph W. (1995), *Boundaries and Frontiers in Medieval Muslim Geography. Transactions of the American Philosophical Society* 85. Philadelphia: 1–73.
- Braun, Hellmut (1969), "Iran under the Safavids and in the 18th Century," in: *The Muslim World. A Historical Survey. Part III: The Last Great Muslim Empires*. Translations and Adaptations by F. R. C. Bagley. Leiden: E. J. Brill: 181–218.
- Braun, Hellmut (1971), "Ein iranischer Großwesir des 17. Jahrhunderts: Mīrzā Muḥammad Taqī," in: *Festgabe deutscher Iranisten zur 2500 Jahrfeier Irans*, edited by Wilhelm Eilers. Stuttgart: Institut für Auslandsbeziehungen.
- Bregel, Yuri E., (1960), "The Peoples of Southern Turkmenistan and Khorasan in the 17th and 18th Centuries," in: *Central Asian Review* 8,3: 264–272.
- Bregel, Yuri E. (1978) "The Sarts in the Khanate of Khiva," in: *Journal of Asian History*, 12,1: 120–51.
- Bregel, Yuri E. (1987), "Nomadische und sesshafte Elemente unter den Turkmenen," in: *Turkmenenforschung* 12: 131–64.
- Bregel, Yuri (2009a), "Uzbeks, Qazaqs and Turkmen," in: *The Cambridge History of Inner Asia: The Chinggisid Age*, edited by Nicola di Cosmo, Allen J. Frank, Peter B. Golden. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 221–36.
- Bregel, Yuri (2009b), "The New Uzbek States: Bukhara, Khiva and Khoqand: c. 1750–1886," in: *The Cambridge History of Inner Asia: The Chinggisid Age*, edited by Nicola di Cosmo, Allen J. Frank, Peter B. Golden. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 392–411.
- Brentjes, Burchard (1983), *Völkerschicksale am Hindukusch*. Leipzig: Koehler & Amelang.
- Brobst, Peter John (1997), "Sir Fredric Goldsmid and the Containment of Persia, 1863–73," in: *Middle East Studies* 33,2: 197–215.
- Brosset, Marie Félicité (1849–1857), *Histoire de la Géorgie depuis l'antiquité jusqu'au XIXe siècle*. St. Petersburg: Impr. de l'acad. Impér. des sciences.
- Browne, Edward G. (1921), *Revised Translation of the Chahār Maqāla ("Four Discourses") of Nizāmī-i 'Ariūdī of Samarqand*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bruce, John (1810), *Annals of the Honourable East India Company*, Vol. 3. London: Black, Parry and Kingsbury.
- Brugsch, Heinrich (1862–3), *Reise der Königlich Preussischen Gesandtschaft nach Persien 1860 und 1861*, 2 vols. Leipzig: Hinrichs.
- Brydges, Harford Jones (1973 [1833]), *The Dynasty of the Kajars, Translated from the Original Persian Manuscript Presented to Sir H. J. Brydges*. New York.

- Brydges, Harford Jones (1976 [1834]), *An Account of the Transactions of His Majesty's Mission to the Court of Persia in the Years 1807–11*, repr. Tehran: Pahlavi Commemorative Reprint Series.
- Buriev, Omonullo (1997), *Temuriylar davri yozma manbalarida markaziy osiyo*. Tashkent: Uzbekiston.
- Burnes, Alexander (1973 [1834]), *Travels into Bokhara*, 3 vols. Karachi: Oxford University Press.
- Burnes, Alexander (1839), "On Herat, with a Sketch of the State of Affairs in the Surrounding Countries," in: Burnes, Alexander/ Leech, Robert/ Lord, P. B./ Wood, John, *Reports and Papers, Political, Geographical, and Commercial*. Calcutta: 38–45.
- Burton, Audrey (1988), "The Fall of Herat to the Uzbeks in 1588," in: *Iran* 26: 119–23.
- Burton, Audrey (1993), *Bukharan Trade, 1558–1718, Papers on Inner Asia, No. 23*. Bloomington: Indiana University Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies.
- Burton, Audrey (1995), "The War of Words between 'Abd al-Mu'min and Shāh 'Abbās," in: *Central Asiatic Journal* 39,1: 51–77.
- Burton, Audrey (1996), "Itinéraires commerciaux et militaires entre Boukhara et l'Inde," in: *Cahiers d'Asie centrale* 1,2: 5–31.
- Burton, Audrey (1997), *The Bukharans: a Dynastic, Diplomatic and Commercial History, 1550–1702*. New York: St. Martin's Press.
- Bushev, P. P. (1959), *Gerat i anglo-iranskaya voyna 1856–1857 gg.* Moscow: Izd-vo vostochnoy lit.
- Busse, Heribert (1959), *Untersuchungen zum islamischen Kanzleiwesen an Hand turkmenischer und safawidischer Urkunden, Islamische Reihe*, Vol. 1. Cairo: Deutsches Archäologisches Institut.
- Busse, Heribert (1972), *History of Persia under Qājār Rule, Translated from the Persian of Ḥasan-e Fasā'ī's, Fārsnāma-ye Nāseri*. New York/London: Columbia University Press.
- Caroe, Olaf & Howell, Evelyn (1963), *The Poems of Khushhal Khan Khatak*. Peshawar: Pashto Academy.
- Carrère d'Encausse, Hélène (1989), "Systematic Conquest, 1865–1884," in: *Central Asia*, edited by Edward Allworth, rev. ed. Durham: Duke University Press: 131–50.
- Casimir, M. J./Glatzer, B. (1971), "Šāh-i Mašhad; a Recently Discovered Madrasah of the Ghurid Period in Ġarġistān (Afghanistan)," in: *East and West* 21: 53–68.
- Centlivres, Pierre (1979), "Groupes ethniques: De l'hétérogénéité d'un concept aux ambiguïtés de la représentation. L'exemple afghan," in: *Beiträge zur Kulturgeographie des islamischen Orients*, edited by E. Ehlers. Marburg: Geographisches Inst.: 25–37.
- Chakravarty, Suhash (1976), *From Khyber to Oxus: A Study in Imperial Expansion*. New Delhi: Orient Longman.
- Champagne, David Charles (1981), "The Afghan-Iranian Conflict over Herat Province and European Intervention 1796–1863: A Reinterpretation," PhD. diss., Austin: University of Texas.
- Chandler, Andrea (1998), *Institutions of Isolation: Border Controls in the Soviet Union and Its Successor States 1917–1993*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Chardin, Jean (1810–11), *Voyages du chevalier Chardin, en Perse, et autres lieux de l'Orient*, edited by L. Langlès, 10 vols. and map. Paris.
- Chardin, John (1686), *The Travels of John Chardin into Persia and the East-Indes... to Which Is Added, The Coronation of this Present King of India, Solyman the Third*. London: Moses Pitt.
- Charikov, N. (1877), "A Voyage to Uzbekistan in 1671–1672," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* 21: 218–21.
- Chmelnizkij, Sergej (1989), *Zwischen Kuschanen und Arabern: Die Architektur Mittelasiens im V.–VIII. Jh.* Berlin: Hosemann & Goebel GmbH.
- Chodzko, A. (1856), "Hérat," in: *Revue de l'Orient, Nouvelle Série*, 3: 281–92.
- Christie, Charles (1986 [1816]), "Abstract of Captain Christie's Journal," in: Pottinger 1986: 403–423.
- Clairac, Louis-André de La Mamie de (1750), *Histoire de Perse, depuis le commencement de ce siècle*, 3 vols. Paris: Jombert.
- De Clavijo, Ruy Gonzales (1859), *Narrative of the Embassy of Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo to the Court of Tīmūr at Samarkand. A.D. 1403–6*, translated by Clements R. Markham. London: Hakluyt Society.
- De Clavijo, Ruy Gonzales (1993), *Clavijos Reise nach Samarkand 1403–1406*, translated by Uta Lindgren. München: Institut für Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften.
- Collins, Basil (2001), *The Best Divisions for Knowledge of the Regions/Al-Muqaddasī*. Reading: Garret.
- Conolly, Arthur (1834), *Journey to the North of India*, 2 vols. London: Richard Bentley.
- Conolly, Edward (1840–1841), "Sketch of the Physical Geography of Sistan," in: *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 9: 710–726; 10: 334–5.
- Conrad, H. (1897), "Le voyage d'Anthony Jenkinson dans l'Asie centrale en 1558," in: *Bulletin de l'Union géographique du Nord de la France* 18: 28–42, 120–35, 224–42.
- Coulboeuf de Blocqueville, Henri de (1980), *Gefangener bei den Turkomanen, 1860–1861*. Nürnberg: Nomad Press.
- Curatola, Giovanni (1983), "Kalat-i Nadiri. Note sul 'Barocco' Indo-Persiano," in: *Quaderni del Seminario di Iranistica, Uralo-Altaistica e Caucasologia dell'Università degli Studi di Venezia*, Parte Quarta. Venezia: Per l'Undici di Marzo.
- Curzon, George N. (1907), *Frontiers*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Curzon, George N. (1966 [1892]), *Persia and the Persian Question*, 2 vols., repr. London: Frank Cass & Co.
- Curzon, George N. (1967 [1889]), *Russia in Central Asia and the Anglo-Russian Question*, repr. London: Frank Cass & Co.
- Curzon, George N. (1988 [1923]), *Tales of Travels*. London: Century.
- Dahlmann, Dittmar (1991), "Zwischen Europa und Asien. Russischer Imperialismus im 19. Jahrhundert," in: *Imperialistische Kontinuität und nationale Ungeduld im 19. Jahrhundert*, edited by Wolfgang Reinhard. Frankfurt a. M.: 50–67.
- Dale, Stephen F. (1990), "Indo-Russian Trade in the Eighteenth Century," in: *South Asia and World Capitalism*, edited by Sugata Bose. Delhi: Oxford University Press: 140–56.

- Dale, Stephen F. (1994), *Indian Merchants and Eurasian Trade, 1600–1750*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dale, Stephen (2009), “The Later Timurids c. 1450–1526,” in: *The Cambridge History of Inner Asia: The Chinggisid Age*, edited by Nicola di Cosmo, Allen J. Frank, Peter B. Golden. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 199–217.
- Dānīshpazhūh, Muḥammad Taqī (ed.) (1353/1974), “Āmār-i māli va niẓāmī-yi Īrān dar 1128 yā tafṣīl-i ‘asākīr-i firūzī ma’āthir-i Shāh Sulṭān Ḥusain Ṣafavī az Mīrzā Muḥammad Ḥusain Mustaufī,” in: *Farhang-i Īrān Zamīn* 20: 396–421.
- Darharam, Ghulām Riẓā (1370/1991), *Jughrāfiyā-yi tārikhī-yi Khurāsān dar tārikh-i Ḥāfiẓ-i Abrū*. Tehran.
- Dasti, Humaira (1990), “Multan as a Centre of Trade and Commerce during the Mughal Period,” in: *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 38,3: 247–56.
- Dasti, Humaira (1998), *Multan, a Province of the Mughal Empire*. Karachi: Royal Book Company.
- Dastpāk, Fāṭima (1996), “Khurāsān dar ‘ahd-i Shāh Rukh-i Tīmūrī,” Thesis, Dānīshkada-yi Adabiyāt, Dānīshgāh-i Firdausī, Mashhad.
- Daulatshāhī, Ismā‘īl (1963a), “Tīragī-yi ravābiṭ-i Īrān va Inglīs dar zamān-i Nāṣir al-Dīn Shāh,” in: *Sukhan* 14,1: 49–57.
- Daulatshāhī, Ismā‘īl (1963b), “Nāmāhā-yi tārikhī: Muḥammad Shāh va Harāt,” in: *Sukhan* 14,2: 151–3.
- Daulatshāhī, Ismā‘īl (1964), “Nāṣir al-Dīn Shāh va Inglīsīhā va mas’ala-yi Harāt,” in: *Sukhan* 15,3: 270–276.
- Davidovich, E. A. (1961), Materialy dlya kharakteristiki ekonomiki i sotsial’nikh otnosheniy v Sredney Azii XVI v. (Material for a Description of the Economic Structure and Social Relations in 16th Century Central Asia). *Izvestiya otdeleniya obshchestvennykh Nauk Tad. SSR*, Vyp. 1, 24.
- Devra, Ghan.Shyam Lal (1978), “A Study of the Trade Relations between Rajasthan and Sindh/Multan (1650–1800 A.D.),” in: *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress* 1978, Vol. 1: 581–94.
- Dewald, Jonathan (2001), “The Early Modern Period,” in: *Encyclopedia of European Social History from 1350 to 2000*, edited by Peter N. Stearns. Detroit: Scribner, I: 165–77.
- Dickson, Martin B. (1958), “Shah Tahmasb and the Uzbeks. The Duel for Khurasan with ‘Ubayd Khan: 930–946/1524–1540,” Ph.D. diss., Princeton University.
- Dickson, Martin B. (1962), “The Fall of the Safavi Dynasty,” in: *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 82: 503–17.
- Digby, Simon (1986), “The Sufi Shaikh as a Source of Authority in Medieval India,” in: *Islam et société en Asie du Sud*, edited by Marc Gaborieau. Paris: Collection Purusartha: 57–77.
- Doerfer, Gerhard (1963–1975), *Türkische und mongolische Lehnwörter im Neupersischen*, 4 vols. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag.
- Doerfer, Gerhard (1987), *Lexik und Sprachgeographie des Chaldsch*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Dorn, Bernhard (1976 [1829–36]), *History of the Afghans. Translated for the Persian of Neamet Ullah*. Karachi: Indus Publications.
- Drouville, Gaspard (1825), *Voyage en Perse, fait en 1812 et 1813*, 2 vols. Paris: Librairie Nationale et Etrangère.
- Dshikijew, Ata (1994), *Das turkmenische Volk im Mittelalter*. Berlin: Schletzer.
- Dupree, Nancy Hatch (1977), *An Historical Guide to Afghanistan*. Kabul: Afghan Tourist Organization.
- Durrani, Ashiq Muḥammad Khan (1981), *Multan under the Afghans (1752–1818)*. Multan: Bazme Safaqaat.
- Durrani, Ashiq Muḥammad (1990), “The Role of the Pathans during the Sikh Period in Multan (1818–1849),” in: *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 38, 2: 103–126.
- Durrānī, ‘Ashiq Muḥammad Khān (1999), *Tārikh-i Afghānistān*. Lahore: Sang-i-Meel.
- Eastwick, Edward B. (1976 [1864]), *Journal of a Diplomat’s Three Years Residence in Persia*, 2 vols. Tehran: Pahlavi Commemorative Reprint Series.
- Ebrahimnejad, Hormoz (1999), *Pouvoir et succession en Iran. Les premiers Qājārs 1726–1844*. Paris, Montreal: Harmattan.
- Echraqi, Ehsan (1996), “Le Dār al-Saltāna de Qazvin, deuxième capital des Safavides,” in: *Safavid Persia*, edited by Charles Melville. London/New York: I.B. Tauris: 105–115.
- Eckhardt, Hans von (1921), “Russisch-Mittelasien, Persien und Afghanistan,” in: *Wirtschaftsdienst* 25.
- Edwards, David Busby (1986), “The Evolution of Shi’i Political Dissent in Afghanistan,” in: *Shi’ism and Social Protest*, edited by J. I. Cole, N. R. Keddie. New Haven, London: Yale University Press: 201–229.
- Edwards, David Busby (1996), *Heroes of the Age. Moral Fault Lines on the Afghan Frontier*. Berkeley: U. C. Press.
- Ehlers, Eckart (1977), “A City and Hinterland in Iran: The Example of Tabas/Khorassan,” in: *Tijdschrift voor economische en sociale geografie* 5: 284–96.
- Ehlers, Eckart (1978), “Rentenkapitalismus und Stadtentwicklung im islamischen Orient, Beispiel: Iran,” in: *Erdkunde* 32: 124–42.
- Ehlers, Eckart (1980), “Karawanenhandel, Karawanenverkehr und die wirtschaftliche Penetration Persiens durch ausländische Mächte um 1900,” in: *Trockengebiete: Natur und Mensch im ariden Lebensraum. Festschrift zum 60. Geburtstag von Helmut Blume*, edited by H. K. Barth and H. Wilhelmy. Tübingen: Geographisches Institut: 239–61.
- Ekbāl, Kamran (1977), *Der Briefwechsel Abbas Mīrzās mit dem britischen Gesandten MacDonald Kinneir im Zeichen des zweiten russisch-persischen Krieges (1825–1828)*. Freiburg: Schwarz.
- Ellenblum, Ronnie (2002), “Were There Borders and Borderlines in the Middle Ages? The Example of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem,” in: *Medieval Frontiers: Concepts and Practices*, edited by David Abūlafia and Nora Berend. Aldershot: Ashgate, 105–119.
- Elphinstone, Mountstuart (1992 [1815]), *An Account of the Kingdom of Caubul*, repr. Karachi: Oxford University Press.
- Elton, J. (1790), *Tagebuch über seine Reise von Moskau nach den nordlichen Gegenden von Persien*. Hamburg: Bohn.
- Emerson, John (1969), “Ex Oriente Lux: Some European Sorces on the Economic Structure of Persia between about 1630 and 1690,” Ph.D. diss., Cambridge University.

- Emerson, John/Floor, Willem (1987), "Rahdars and their Tolls in Safavid and Afsharid Iran," in: *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient* 30: 318–27.
- English, Paul (1977), "The Traditional City of Herat, Afghanistan," in: *From Madina to Metropolis: Heritage and Change in the Near Eastern City*, edited by Leon C. Brown. Princeton, N.J.: The Darwin Press: 73–90.
- Entner, Marvin L. (1965), *Russo-Persian Commercial Relations, 1828–1914*. Gainesville: University of Florida Press.
- Erskine, W. (1974 [1854]), *A History of India under the Two First Sovereigns of the House of Taimur, Baber and Humayun*. Karachi: Oxford University Press.
- Evans, John L. (1984), *Mission of N. P. Ignat'ev to Khiva and Bukhara in 1858*. Newtonville, Ma.: Oriental Research Partners.
- Falsafi, Naṣrullāh (1369/1990), *Zindigānī-yi Shāh 'Abbās-i Avval*, 5 vols. Tehran: Intishārāt-i 'Ilmī.
- "Farmān-i Shāh Tahmasb ba ḥākim-i Harāt va umarā-yi vilāyat jihat-i istiqlāl-i Humāyun, pādshāh-i Hind," in: *Dānish* 2,2 (1950): 79–83.
- Farmanfarmaian, Fatema Soudavar (1996), "James Baillie in Mashhad, or, the Pilgrimage of a Nineteenth-Century Scotsman to the Shrine of Imām Riḍā," in: *Iran* 34: 101–15.
- Farmayan, Hafez F. (1981), "Turkoman Identity and Presence in Iran," in: *Journal of South Asian and Middle Eastern Studies* 4,4: 45–62.
- Fatāḥī, Fath-al-Dīn (1370/1991), *Harāt dar qalamrau-yi isti'mār*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i mustaufī.
- Fāzil, Maḥmūd (1972), "Madāris-i qadīm-i Mashhad," in: *Vahīd* 11,1: 75–78.
- Febvre, Lucien (1974 [1925]), *A Geographical Introduction to History*. Westport: Greenwood Press.
- Ferdinand, Klaus V. (1959), *Preliminary Notes on Hazāra Culture, Historisk-filosofiske Meddelelser af Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab*, 37, 5. Copenhagen: Ejnar Munksgaard.
- Ferdinand, Klaus V. (1963), "The Horizontal Windmills of Western Afghanistan," in: *Folk* 5: 71–89.
- Ferdinand, Klaus V. (1964), "Ethnographical Notes on Chahār Aimaq, Hazāra and Moghol," in: *Acta Orientalia* 28,1–2: 175–203.
- Ferdinand, Klaus V. (2006), *Afghan Nomads—Expansion, Trade and Commercialization in Afghanistan and India 1800–1980*. Copenhagen: Rhodos Internat. Science and Art. Publ.
- Ferrier, Joseph P. (1857), *Caravan Journeys and Wanderings in Persia, Afghanistan, Turkistan and Beloochistan*. London: John Murray.
- Ferrier, Joseph P. (1858), *History of the Afghans*. London: John Murray.
- Ferrier, Joseph P. (1870), *Voyages et aventures en Perse, dans l'Afghanistan, le Belouchistan et le Tourkestan*, 2 vols. Paris.
- Ferrier, J. S. (1852), "Esquisse historique sur Hérat et son territoire," in: *Revue orientale et algérienne* 3: 288–310.
- Feuvrier, J. B. (1899), *Trois ans à la cour de Perse*. Paris: Juven.
- Fikrat, Muḥammad Āṣaf (ed. 1369/1990), 'Ain al-vaqāyī'. *Tārīkh-i Afghānistān dar sālhā-yi 1207–1324 h.q.* Tehran: Mauqūfāt-i Duktur Maḥmūd Afshār Yazdī.
- Fikrat, Muḥammad Āṣaf (ed. 1381/2002), *Pīrāsta-yi tārikhnāma-yi Harāt*. Tehran: Bunyād-i Mauqūfāt-i Duktur Maḥmūd Afshār Yazdī.
- Fiorani Piacentini, Valeria (1991), "Notes on the Definition of the Western Borders of British India, Sistan and Baluchistan in 19th Century," in: *Yād-Nāma in memoria di Alessandro Bausani*, edited by Biancamaria Scarcia Amoretti and Lucia Rostagno. 2 vols. Rome: Bardi Editore. I: 189–205.
- Fischel, W. J. (1982), "The Jews in Medieval Iran from the 16th to the 18th Centuries: Political, Economic and Communal Aspects," in: *Irano-Judaica: Studies relating to Jewish Contacts with Persian Culture throughout the Ages*, edited by S. Shaked. Jerusalem: Ben-Zvi-Inst.
- Fischer, Klaus (1967), "Zur Lage von Kandahar an Landverbindungen zwischen Iran und Indien," in: *Bonner Jahrbücher des Rheinischen Landesmuseums in Bonn* 167: 129–232.
- Fischer, K. (1978a), "From the Rise of Islam to the Mongol Invasion," in: *The Archaeology of Afghanistan from Earliest Times to the Timurid Period*, edited by F. R. Allchin and Norman Hammond. London: Academic Press: 301–55.
- Fischer, K. (1978b), "From the Mongols to the Mughals," in: *The Archaeology of Afghanistan from Earliest Times to the Timurid Period*, edited by F. R. Allchin and Norman Hammond. London: Academic Press: 357–404.
- Floor, Willem M. (1976a), "The Merchants (tujjar) in Qajar Iran," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 126: 101–135.
- Floor, Willem M. (1976b), "The Customs in Qajar Iran," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 126: 281–311.
- Floor, Willem M. (1977), "Bankruptcy in Qajar Iran," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 127: 61–76.
- Floor, Willem M. (1979), "The Bankers (sarraf) in Qajar Iran," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 129: 263–281.
- Floor, Willem M. (1996), "The Dutch and the Persian Silk Trade," in: *Safavid Persia: The History and Politics of an Islamic Society*, edited by Charles Melville. London: I.B. Tauris: 323–68.
- Floor, Willem (2000), *The Economy of Safavid Persia*. Wiesbaden.
- Floor, Willem (2001), "The Chapar-Khāna System of Qajar Iran," in: *Iran* 39: 257–91.
- Floor, Willem (2004), "Tea Consumption and Imports into Qajar Iran," in: *Studia Iranica* 33: 47–111.
- Floor, Willem (2005), "Dutch Trade in Afsharid Persia (1730–1753)," in: *Studia Iranica* 34: 43–93.
- Floor, Willem (transl.) (2008), *Titles & Emoluments in Savid Iran. A Third Manual of Safavid Administration, by Mirza Naqi Nasiri*. Washington: Mage Publishers.

- Floor, Willem/Faghfoory, Mohammad H. (transl., 2007), *Dastur al-Moluk. A Safavid State Manual by Mohammad Rafi' al-Din Ansâri*. Costa Mesa: Mazda Publishers.
- Fontpertuis, A. F. de (1880), "La ville de Hérat et son territoire," in: *Revue de géographie* 7: 106–117.
- Foran, John (1993), *Fragile Resistance: Social Transformation in Iran from 1500 to the Revolution*. Boulder: Westview Press.
- Forbes, F. (1844), "Route from Turbat Haideri, in Khorasan to the River Heri Rud on the Borders of Sistan," in: *Journal of the Royal Geographical Society*, London, 14: 145–92.
- Foreign Office, Great Britain (1839), *Correspondence Relating to Persia and Afghanistan*. London: J. Harrison and Son.
- Forrest, George W. (1906), *Selections from the Travels and Journals Preserved in the Bombay Secretariat*. Bombay: Government Central Press.
- Forster, George (1798), *A Journey from Bengal to England through the Northern Parts of India, Kashmere, Afghanistan and Persia, and into Russia, by the Caspian-Sea*, 2 vols. London: R. Fauldner.
- Foster, William (ed., 1921), *Early Travels in India 1583–1619*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Fragner, Bert G. (1979), *Persische Memoirenliteratur als Quelle zur neueren Geschichte Irans*, *Freiburger Islamstudien* 7. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag.
- Fragner, Bert G. (1980), *Repertorium persischer Herrscherurkunden. Publierte Originalurkunden bis 1848*. Freiburg i. Br.: Schwarz.
- Fragner, Bert G. (1986), "Social and Internal Economic Affairs," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*, edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 491–567.
- Fragner, Bert G. (1997), "Iran under Ilkhanid Rule in a World History Perspective," in: *L'Iran face à la domination mongole*, edited by Denise Aigle. Paris/Tehran: 121–31.
- Fragner, Bert (1989), "Historische Wurzeln neuzeitlicher iranischer Identität: zur Geschichte des politischen Begriffs 'Iran' im späten Mittelalter und in der Neuzeit," in: *Studia Semitica necnon Iranica. Rudolpho Macuch septuagenario ab amicis et discipulis dedicata*, edited by Maria Macuch, Christa Müller-Kessler, Bert G. Fragner. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz: 79–100.
- Fragner, Bert G. (1999), *Die „Persophonie“. Regionalität, Identität und Sprachkontakt in der Geschichte Asiens*. Berlin: Das Arabische Buch.
- Fragner, Bert G. (2001a), "Timur and the Timurids as Seen in Retrospective: Reflexions and Constructions in History," Yar-Shater-Lecture, Harvard University, April 2001.
- Fragner, Bert G. (2001b), "The Concept of Regionalism in Historical Research on Central Asia and Iran," in: *Studies on Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel*, edited by Devin DeWeese. Bloomington: Indiana University Publications: 341–354.
- Fragner, Bert G. (2005), "Mongolisches Erbe unter den Strenggläubigen: Die Karriere des unislamischen Gewohnheitsrechts in den nachmittelalterlichen Staaten im iranischen Hochland," in: *Rechtspluralismus in der islamischen Welt*, edited by Michael Kemper and Maurus Reinkowski. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter: 143–51.
- Fragner, Bert (2006), "Ilkhanid Rule and Its Contributions to Iranian Political Culture," in: *Beyond the Legacy of Genghis Khan*, edited by Linda Komaroff. Leiden: Brill: 68–80.
- Fraser, James (1742), *The History of Nadir Shah, Formerly Called Thamas Kuli Khan, The Present Emperor of Persia*. London: W. Straban.
- Fraser, James Baillie (1825), *Narrative of a Journey into Khorasan in the Years 1821 and 1822*. London: Longman et al.
- Fraser, James Baillie (1834), *Historical and Descriptive Account of Persia, From the Earliest Ages to the Present Time*. New York: Harper and Brothers.
- Fraser, James Baillie (1973 [1838]), *A Winter's Journey from Constantinople to Tehran; with Travels through Various Parts of Persia*, 2 vols., repr. New York: Arno Press.
- Fraser-Tytler, W. K. (1953), *Afghanistan. A Study of Political Developments in Central and Southern Asia*, 2nd ed. London/New York/Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- Friese, Matthias/Geilen, Stefan (eds.) (2002), *Deutsche in Afghanistan. Die Abenteuer des Oskar von Niedermayer am Hindukusch*, repr. of Niedermayer 1925. Köln: Aqua Verlag, 2002.
- Frye, Richard (1948), "Two Timurid Monuments in Herat," in *Artibus Asiae* 11: 206–11.
- Frye, Richard (1983), "The political History of Iran under the Sasanians," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran, Vol. 3 (1), The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanian Periods*, edited by Ehsan Yarshater. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 116–80.
- Fryer, John (1912–1915), *A New Account of East India and Persia, Being Nine Years' Travels, 1672–1681*, 3 vols., edited by William Crooke, Hakluyt Society Publications, 2d ser., Nos. 19–20, 39. London.
- Füfälfäzä'ī, 'Azīz al-Dīn Vakīlī (1344/1955), *Tidhkār-i dīvān-i humāyūn-i a'lā*. Kabul: Maṭba'a-yi 'Umūmī.
- Füfälfäzä'ī, 'Azīz al-Dīn Vakīlī (1958), *Durrat al-zamān fī tārikh-i Shāh Zamān*. Kabul: Maṭba'a-yi Daulatī.
- Füfälfäzä'ī, 'Azīz al-Dīn Vakīlī (1967), *Tīmūr Shāh Durrānī*, 2 vols., repr. Kabul: Anjuman-i Tārikh.
- Gabelnetz, H. C. von der (1866), "Über die Sprache der Hazara und Aimak," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 20: 326–35.
- Gachet, C. (1882), "L'oasis de Merv et la route de Herat," in: *Bulletin de la Société de géographie commerciale de Bordeaux*. 5: 488–97.
- Gafurov, B. G. (1966), "The Bahr al-Asrar. Cultural Contacts between Central Asia and Pakistan," in: *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 14,2: 93–103.

- Galkin, M.N. (1867), "Pokanzaniia afgantsev i turkmen, soprovoshdarshikh v 1840g angliksikh putesheptvennikov Abbota i Shekspira is Gerat v Khivu i ottuda na Kaspiiskoe more," in: *Zapiski Imperatorskogo Russkogo geograficheskogo obshchestva po otdeleniiu etnografi* 1: 95–113.
- Gankovsky, Yuri (1950), "Iz istorii osadi Kandagara Nadir Shakhom Afsharom v 1737–1738 gg.," in: *Kratkiy Soobsheeniye Instituta Vostovedeniya* 37, 27–33.
- Gankovsky, Yuri (1958), *Imperiya Durrani*. Moscow: Izd-vo vostochnoy lit.
- Gankovsky, Yuri (1981), "The Durrani Empire," in: USSR Academy of Sciences, *Afghanistan Past and Present, Oriental Studies in the USSR*, No. 3, translated by Evgeni Khazanov. Moscow: Nauka.
- Gaube, Heinz (1977), "Innenstadt-Außenstadt: Kontinuität und Wandel im Grundriss von Herat zwischen dem X. und dem XV. Jahrhundert," in: *Beiträge zur Geographie orientalischer Städte und Märkte*, edited by G. Schweizer. Wiesbaden: Dr. Ludwig Reichert: 213–40.
- Gaube, Heinz (1979), *Iranian Cities*. New York: University Press.
- Gauglitz, K. G. (1969), "Eigentümlichkeiten des Wegesystems in iranischen Städten," in: *Orient* 5: 162–169.
- Gazetteer of the Mooltan District 1883–84*. Lahore: Punjab Government, 1884.
- Gerard, J. (1879), "La ville et la citadelle d'Hérat," in: *Exploration* 144: 663–4.
- Ghani, Ashraf (1982), "Production and Domination: Afghanistan, 1747–1901," PhD diss., Columbia University.
- Ghose, Dilip Kumar (1960), *England and Afghanistan: A Phase in Their Relations*. Calcutta: The World Press.
- Ghubār, Mir Ghulām Muḥammad (1981 [1968]), *Afghānistān dar masīr-i tārikh*. Qum: Payām-i Muhājir.
- Gibb, Hamilton A. R. (1970 [1923]), *The Arab Conquests in Central Asia*, repr. New York: AMS Press.
- Gilbar, G. (1979), "The Persian Economy in the Mid-19th Century," in: *Die Welt des Islams* 19,1–4: 196–211.
- Gill, W. J. (1874), "Travels in Northern Persia," in: *The Geographical Magazine* 1,7: 272–7.
- Gladwin, Francis (1788), *The Memoirs of Khojeh Abdul-Kurreem, a Cashmerian with Distinction*. Calcutta: William Mackay.
- Glassen, Erika (1970), *Die frühen Safawiden nach Qāzī Aḥmad Qumī. Islamkundliche Untersuchungen* 5. Freiburg: Schwarz.
- Glatzer, Bernt (1973), "The Madrasah of Shah-i-Mashhad in Badghis," in: *Afghanistan* (Kabul) 25,4: 46–68.
- Glatzer, Bernt (1977), *Nomaden von Gharjistan*. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag.
- Glatzer, Bernt/Stuckert, Ruedi (1980), "Die Große Moschee und das Mausoleum des Ghiyāth ud-Din in Herat," in: *Afghanistan Journal* 7,1: 3–22.
- Gnoli, Gherardo (1989), *The Idea of Iran. An Essay on its Origin*. Rome: Ist. Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente.
- Godard, A. (1951), "L'origine de la madrasa, de la mosquée et du caravanseraïl à quatre Iwans," in: *Ars Islamica* 15–16: 1–9.
- Goldsmid, Frederic J. (1867), "Notes on Eastern Persia and Western Beluchistan," in: *Journal of the Royal Geographical Society, London* 37: 269–297.
- Goldsmid, Frederic J. (1873), "Journey from Bandar Abbas to Mas-had by Sistan, with some Account of the Last-Named Province," in: *Journal of the Royal Geographical Society, London* 43: 65–83.
- Goldsmid, Frederic J. (1875–6), "Capt. Napier's Journey on the Turkoman Frontier of Persia," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* 20: 166–82.
- Goldsmid, Frederic J. (ed.) (1876), *Eastern Persia, an Account of the Journeys of the Persian Boundary Commission 1870–1872*. 2 vols. London: Macmillan and Co.
- Golombek, Lisa (1969), *The Timurid Shrine at Gazur Gah*. Toronto: Royal Ontario Museum.
- Golombek, Lisa (1971), "The Chronology of Turbat-i Shaikh Jam," in: *Iran* 9: 27–44.
- Golombek, Lisa (1983), "The Resilience of the Friday Mosque: The Case of Herat," in: *Muqarnas* 1: 95–102.
- Gommans, Jos J. L. (1991), "Mughal India and Central Asia in the Eighteenth Century," in: *Itinerario* 15,1: 51–70.
- Gommans, Jos J. L. (1995), *The Rise of the Indo-Afghan Empire c. 1710–1780*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Gorshenina, Svetlana (2000), *La Route de Samarcande. L'Asie Centrale dans l'objectif des voyageurs d'autrefois*. Geneva: Editions Olizane.
- Granmayeh, Ali (1996), "Sefarat Nāma-yi Khwarezm—the last Iranian mission to Central Asia in the 19th century," in: *Central Asian Survey* 15,2: 233–53.
- Greaves, Rose L. (1986), "Sistan in British Indian Frontier Policy," in: *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 49: 90–102.
- Greaves, Rose L. (1991), "Iranian Relations with Great Britain and British India, 1798–1921," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 7, *From Nadir Shah to the Islamic Republic*, edited Peter Avery, Gavin Hambly and Charles Melville. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 374–425.
- Greenfield, James (1904), *Die Verfassung des persischen Staates, nebst einem Anhang über Gesetze, Bildungswesen, sanitäre und wirtschaftliche Zustände im heutigen Persien*. Berlin: Vahlen.
- Grønhaug, Reidar (1978), "Scale as a Variable in Analysis: Fields in Social Organization in Herat, Northwest Afghanistan," in: *Scale and Social Organization*, edited by Fredrik Barth. Oslo: Univ.-Forl.: 78–121.
- Gronke, Monika (1992), "The Persian Court between Palace and Tent: From Timur to 'Abbas I," in: *Timurid Art and Culture: Iran and Central Asia in the Fifteenth Century*, edited by Lisa Golombek and Maria Subtelny. Leiden: E. J. Brill: 18–22.
- Gronke, Monika (2003), *Geschichte Irans. Von der Islamisierung bis zur Gegenwart*. München: Beck.

- Gross, Jo-Ann (2001), "Naqshbandi-Appeals to the Herat Court: A Preliminary Study of Trade and Property Issues," in: *Studies on Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel*, edited by Devin DeWeese. Bloomington: Indiana University Publications: 113–28.
- Gross, Jo-Ann/Urunbaev, Asom (ed., transl.) (2002), *The Letters of Khwāja 'Ubayd Allāh Ahrār and His Associates*. Leiden/Boston/Köln: Brill.
- Grötzbach, Erwin (1979), *Städte und Basare in Afghanistan: eine stadtgeographische Untersuchung*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.
- Gupta, Hari Ram (1987 [1943]), *Panjab, Central Asia and the First Afghan War (Based on Mohan Lal's Observations)*, 2nd ed. Chandigarh: Panjab University.
- Gupta, Hari Ram (1996), *Later Mughal History of the Punjab (1707–1793)*, repr. Lahore: Sang-i-Meel Publications.
- Haarmann, Ulrich (1974), "Staat und Religion in Transoxanien im frühen 16. Jahrhundert," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 124: 332–69.
- Habberton, William (1937), "Anglo-Russian Relations Concerning Afghanistan, 1837–1907," in: *Illinois Studies in the Social Sciences* 21,4.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1973a), "Khurāsān az naẓar-i adab va tārikh," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 24–32.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1983b), "Gharjistān," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 195–199.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1983c), "Manātiq-i janūbī-yi Ghūr," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 200–214.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1983d), "Afghān va Afghānistān," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 389–402.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1983e), "Hilmand va Hāmūn dar tārikh," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 436–450.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1983f), "Khurāsān dar adab va tārikh," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 456–471.
- Ḥabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥaiy (1362/1983g), "Shahr-i Fīrūzkūh kujā būd?," in: Ibid., *Panjāh maqāla*. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm: 545–557.
- Haidar, Najaf (1996), "Precious Metal Flows and Currency Circulation in the Mughal Empire," in: *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient* 39: 298–364.
- Hajianpur, Mahin (1991), "Das Timuridenreich und die Eroberung von Mawarannahr durch die Usbeken," in: *Fischer Weltgeschichte*, Vol. 16, *Zentralasien*, edited by Gavin Hambly, repr. Frankfurt a. M.: Fischer Verlag: 162–175.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1963), "Agha Muḥammad Khan and the Establishment of the Qajar Dynasty," in: *Journal of the Royal Central Asian Society* 50: 161–174.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1964), "An Introduction to the Economic Organization of Early Qajar Iran," in: *Iran* 2: 69–81.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1976), "Introduction," in: J. P. Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys and Wanderings*, repr. Karachi: Oxford University Press: vii–xxvi.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1991a), "Agha Muḥammad Khan and the Establishment of the Qajar Dynasty," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 7, *From Nadir Shah to the Islamic Republic*, edited by Peter Avery, Gavin Hambly and Charles Melville. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 104–73.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1991b), "Iran during the Reigns of Fath 'Ali Shah and Muḥammad Shah," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 7, *From Nadir Shah to the Islamic Republic*, edited by Peter Avery, Gavin Hambly und Charles Melville. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 144–173.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1991c), "The Traditional Iranian City in the Qajar Period," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 7, *From Nadir Shah to the Islamic Republic*, edited by Peter Avery, Gavin Hambly und Charles Melville. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 542–89.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1991d), "Einleitung," in: *Fischer Weltgeschichte*, Vol. 16, *Zentralasien*, edited by Gavin Hambly, repr. Frankfurt a. M.: Fischer Verlag: 11–27.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1991e), "Das Mongolenreich auf dem Gipfel seiner Macht," in: *Fischer Weltgeschichte*, Vol. 16, *Zentralasien*, edited by Gavin Hambly, repr. Frankfurt a. M.: Fischer Verlag: 113–127.
- Hambly, Gavin R. G. (1991f), "Die Schaibaniden," in: *Fischer Weltgeschichte*, Vol. 16, *Zentralasien*, edited by Gavin Hambly, repr. Frankfurt a. M.: Fischer Verlag: 176–85.
- Hamilton, Angus (1906), *Afghanistan*. London: William Heinemann.
- Hammer-Purgstall, J. v. (1842–43), *Geschichte der Ilchane*, 2 vols. Darmstadt: Leske.
- Haneda, Masashi (1984), "L'Evolution de la garde royale des Safavides," in: *Le Moyen Orient et l'Océan Indien* 1: 41–64.
- Haneda, Masashi (1987), *Le Châh et les Qizilbāš. Le système militaire safavide. Islamkundliche Untersuchungen*, Vol. 119. Berlin: Klaus Schwarz.
- Haneda, Masashi (1989), "The Evolution of the Safavid Royal Guard," in: *Iranian Studies* 22,2–3: 57–85.
- Hanway, Jonas (1754), *An Historical Account of the British Trade over the Caspian Sea; with the Author's Journal of Travels from England through Russia into Persia... to which are added, The Revolutions of Persia during the present Century, with the particular History of the great Usurper Nadir Kouli*, 2nd ed., 2 vols. London: T. Osborne.
- Hantzche, J. C. (1980), "Topography and Statistics of the Persian Turkoman," in: *Turkoman Studies I*, edited by Robert Pinner & Michael Francis. London: Oguz Press: 57–62.
- Harlan, Josiah (1939), *Central Asia: Personal Narrative of General Josiah Harlan, 1823–1841*, edited by Frank E. Ross. London: Luzac & Co.
- Harnisch, A. (1891), *Badghis, Land und Leute. Nach den geographischen Ergebnissen der Afghanischen Grenzkommission von 1884–88*. Berlin.

- Hecker, Felicia J. (1993), "A Fifteenth Century Chinese Diplomat in Herat," in: *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Third Series, 3,1: 85–98.
- Herberg, Werner (1978), *Qala-i konahi Taywara, Ghor. Afghanistan. Ein Fürstentum des 19. Jahrhunderts*. T.U. Berlin.
- Herberg, Werner (1982), "Die Wehrbauten von Ghor (Afghanistan)," in: *Die Welt des Islams* 22: 67–84.
- Herrmann, Albert (1910), *Die alten Seidenstraßen zwischen China und Syrien*. Berlin: Weidmann.
- Herzig, Edmund (1990), "The Iranian Raw Silk Trade and European Manufacture in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries," in: *Journal of Economic History* 19: 73–89.
- Herzig, Edmund (1992), "The Volume of Iranian Raw Silk Exports in the Safavid Period," in: *Iranian Studies* 25: 61–80.
- Hillenbrand, Robert (1998), *Islamic Architecture*. Tehran.
- Hillenbrand, Robert (1999), *Islamic Art and Architecture*. London: Thames and Hudson.
- Hillenbrand, Robert (2002), "The Ghurid Tomb at Herat," in: *Cairo to Kabul. Afghan and Islamic Studies*, edited by Warwick Ball and Leonard Harrow. London: Melisende: 123–143.
- Hinz, Walther (1933), "Schah Ismā'il II, Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Safawiden," in: *Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen, Westasiatische Studien* 36: 19–100.
- Hinz, Walther (1936), *Irans Aufstieg zum Nationalstaat im fünfzehnten Jahrhundert*. Berlin und Leipzig: Walter de Gruyter & Co.
- Hinz, Walther (1955), *Islamische Maße und Gewichte*. Handbuch der Orientalistik. Ergänzungsband 1, Heft 1. Leiden: Brill.
- Hinz, Walther (1991), *Islamische Währungen des 11. bis 19. Jahrhunderts umgerechnet in Gold*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Hochmuth, Christian/Rau, Susanne (eds.) (2006) *Machträume der frühneuzeitlichen Stadt*. Konstanz: UVK Verlagsgesellschaft.
- Hoffmann, Birgitt (1986), *Persische Geschichte 1694–1835 erlebt, erinnert und erfunden. Der Rustam at-tawārīḥ in deutscher Bearbeitung*. Bamberg: Aku Verlag.
- Hoffmann, Birgitt (2000), *Waqf im Mongolischen Iran. Rasiduddins Sorge um Nachruhm und Seelenheil*. Stuttgart: Franz Steiner.
- Holdich, Thomas Hungerford (1885), "Afghan Boundary Commission. Geographical Notes," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography* 7,1: 39–44; 7,3: 160–6; 7,5: 273–92.
- Holdich, Thomas Hungerford (1903), "Our Commercial Relations with Afghanistan," in: *Journal of the Society of Arts* 52: 347.
- Holdich, Thomas Hungerford (1909), *The Indian Borderland, 1880–1900*, 2nd ed. London: Methuen and Co.
- Holdich, Thomas Hungerford (1910), *The Gates of India*. London: MacMillan and Co.
- Holdsworth, May (1959), *Turkestan in the Nineteenth Century*. Oxford: Central Asian Research Centre.
- Holzwarth, Wolfgang (2005), "Relations between Uzbek Central Asia, the Great Steppe and Iran, 1700–1750," in: *Shifts and Drifts in Nomad-Sedentary Relations*, edited by Stefan Leder and Bernhard Streck. Wiesbaden: Dr. Ludwig Reichert: 179–216.
- Hopkins, Benjamin (2007), "The Bounds of Identity: The Goldsmid Mission and the Delineation of the Perso-Afghan Border in the 19th century," in: *Journal of Global History* 2,2: 233–54.
- Horden, Peregrine & Purcell, Nicholas (2007), *The Corrupting Sea. A Study of Mediterranean History*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Horn, Paul (1891), *Die Denkwürdigkeiten Shah Tahmasp's von Persien, 1515–1576*. Straßburg: Trübner.
- Houtum-Schindler, A. (1877), "Beschreibung einiger weniger bekannter Routen in Chorassan," in: *Zeitschrift der Gesellschaft für Erdkunde* 12: 215–29.
- Houtum-Schindler, A. (1888), "On the Length of the Persian Farsakh," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography* 10,9: 584–8.
- Hughes-Buller, R. (1989 [1908], *Imperial Gazetteer of India. Provincial Series: Baluchistan*, repr. Gurgaon: Vipin Jain for Vintage Books.
- Hujwiri, 'Alī b. 'Uthmān (1911), *The Kashf al-mahjūb. The Oldest Persian Treatise on Sufism*, translated by R. A. Nicholson. Leiden: Brill.
- Hunt, George Henry (1858), *Outram and Havelock's Persian Campaign*. London: Routledge.
- Ḥusainī, Sayyid Muḥsin (1387/2008), *Khvāja Rabī'*. Mashhad: Āstān-i Quds.
- Iqbāl, 'Abbās (1364/1985), *Tārīkh-i mufaṣṣal-i Īrān. Az ḥamlahā-yi Chingiz ta tashkīl-i daulat-i tīmūrī*, 2nd edition. Tehran: Amīr Kabīr.
- Irons, William (1975), *The Yomut Turkmen: A Study of the Social Organization among a Central Asian Turkic-Speaking Population*. Ann Arbor: Museum of Anthropology.
- Irvine, W. (1907), "Ahmad Shah Abdālī and the Indian Wazir Imad-ul-Molk (1756–7)," in: *Indian Antiquary* 36: 10–18.
- 'Iṣmatī, Ma'šūma (1365/1986), *Mauqif va naqsh-i zanān-i Afghānistān az avākhir-i qarn-i hizhdā ilā ākhir-i qarn-i nūzdah*. Kabul: Akādīmī-yi 'Ulūm.
- Issawi, Charles (1970), "The Decline of Middle Eastern Trade 1100–1850," in: *Islam and the Trade of Asia*, edited by Donald S. Richards. Oxford: Cassirer.
- Issawi, Charles (1971), *The Economic History of Iran 1800–1914*. Chicago/London: The University of Chicago.
- Ittīḥādīya, Maṣūra (1354/1975), "Avvalīm ikhtilāf-i Īrān va Inḡlīs bar sar-i mas'ala-yi Harāt 1254," in: *Nigīn* 123: 33–8, 54–5; 125: 29–37.
- Ivanow, W. (1926), "Notes on the Ethnology of Khurasan," in: *The Geographical Journal* 67: 143–58.
- Jackson, Peter (1999), "From Ulus to Khanate: The Making of the Mongol States c. 1220–1290," in: *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy*, edited by Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan. Leiden: Brill: 12–38.
- Ja'farian, Rasūl (1370/1991), *Dīn va siyāsāt dar दौरā-yi ṣafavī*. Qum.
- Ja'farian, Rasūl (1375/1996), "Nādir Shāh va mas'ala-yi vaḥdat-i islāmī," in: *Ibid.*, *Maqālāt-i tārikhī*, vol. 1. Qum: 13–51.

- Ja'farian, Rasūl (1378/1999a), *Şafavīya az zuhūr ta zawāl*. Qum.
- Ja'farian, Rasūl (1378/1999b), "Nigāhī ba 'avāmil-i nāpāydāri-i vaqf dar Īrān," in: Ibid., *Maqālāt-i tārikhī*, vol. 5. Qum: 253–66.
- Jakobi, Jürgen (1992), "Agriculture between Literary Tradition and First-Hand Experience: The Irshad al-zera'a by Qasim b. Yusof Abū Nasri Haravī," in: *Timurid Art and Culture: Iran and Central Asia in the Fifteenth Century*, edited by Lisa Golombek and Maria Subtelny. Leiden: E.J. Brill: 201–7.
- Jamālzāda, Muḥammad 'Alī (1964), "Yak sanad dar bāra-yi Sīstān," in: *Sukhan* 15,2.
- Janata, Alfred (1962–3), "Die Bevölkerung von Ghor. Beitrag zur Ethnographie und Ethnogenese der Chahar Aimaq," in: *Archiv für Völkerkunde* 17–18: 73–156.
- Janata, Alfred (1970), "Völkerkundliche Forschungen in Westafghanistan, 1969," in: *bustan* 2,3:50–61.
- Janata, Alfred (1971), "On the Origin of the Firuzkuhis in Western Afghanistan," in: *Archiv für Völkerkunde* 25: 57–65.
- Janata, Alfred (1975), "Beitrag zur Völkerkunde Afghanistans," in: *Archiv für Völkerkunde* 29: 7–36.
- Janata, Alfred (1983), "Ethnogenetische Prozesse in West- und Zentralafghanistan," in: *Ethnologie und Geschichte: Festschrift für Karl Jettmar*, edited by Peter Snoy. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner: 319–30.
- Jones, Sir William (1771), *Histoire de Nader-Chah, connu sous le titre de Thamas Kuli Khan, Empereur de Perse*, 2 vols. Paris.
- Jourdain, A. (1813), "Le jardin de la pureté, contenant l'Histoire des Prophètes, des Rois et des Khalifes. Par Mohammed, fils de Khavendshah, connu sur le nom de Mirkhond," in: *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Imperial de France; Faisant suite aux Notices et Extraits lus au Comité établi dans la ci-devant Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres* 9: 117–274.
- Kaempfer, Engelbert (1977 [1940]), *Am Hofe des persischen Großkönigs 1684–1685*, transl. Walther Hinz, new ed. Tübingen/Basel: Horst Erdmann Verlag.
- Kakar, Hassan K. (1979), *Government and Society in Afghanistan*. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Kakar, Hassan K. (2006), *A Political and Diplomatic History of Afghanistan, 1863–1901*. Leiden: Brill.
- Kamal Khan, Umar (1966), *Saddozais in Multan*. Multan.
- Kamal Khan, Umar (1999), *Rise of Saddozais and Emancipation of Afghans (1638–1747)*. Multan: Bazm-i Saqafat.
- Kaplony, Andreas (2007), "Das Verkehrsnetz Zentralasiens: die Raumgliederung der arabischen Geographen al-Muqaddasi und Ibn Hawqal," in: *Straßen- und Verkehrswesen im hohen und späten Mittelalter*, edited by Rainer Christoph Schwinges. Sigmaringen: Thorbecke: 353–64.
- Kashani-Sabet, Firoozeh (1997), "Fragile Frontiers: The Diminishing Domains of Qajar Iran," in: *Int. J. Middle East Stud.* 29: 205–34.
- Kashani-Sabet, Firoozeh (1999), *Frontier Fictions. Shaping the Iranian Nation, 1804–1946*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.
- Kashmīrī, Muḥammad (1349/1970), "Nabardhā-yi Āq Qal'a," in: *Barrasīhā-yi tārikhī* 5,4: 75–97.
- Kaye, John William (1857), *History of the War in Afghanistan*, 2 vols. London: Richard Bentley.
- Keddie, Nikki R. (1972), "The Economic History of Iran, 1800–1914, and Its Political Impact. An Overview," in: *Iranian Studies* 5,2–3: 58–78.
- Kellenbenz, H. (1964–1965), "Der russische Transithandel mit dem Orient im 17. und zu Beginn des 18. Jahrhunderts," in: *Jahrbuch für die Geschichte Osteuropas* 12: 481–98.
- Kemp, P. M. (transl.) (1959), *Russian Travellers to India and Persia [1624–1798]: Kotov, Yefremov, Danibegov*. Delhi: Jiwan Prakashan.
- Kempiners, Russell G. (1985), "The Struggle for Khurāsān: Aspects of Political, Military and Socio-Economic Interaction in the Early 8th/14th Century". Ph.D. diss., University of Chicago.
- Kennedy, Richard Hartley (1840), *Narrative of the Campaign of the Indus, in Sind and Kaubool, 1838–9*, 2 vols. London: Richard Bentley.
- Keyvani, Mehdi (1982), *Artisans and Guild Life in the Later Safavid Period: Contributions to the Social-Economic History of Persia*. Berlin: Schwarz.
- Khalḡin, Naftula Aronovich (1964), *Russia's Policy in Central Asia, 1857–1868*. London: Central Asian Research Centre.
- Khalīlī, Khalīlullāh (1383/2004), *Āthār-i Harāt*. Tehran: Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Sharī'atī.
- Khan, Ansar Zahid (1990–1993), "Bahr al-Asrar," partial transl., in: *Journal of Pakistan Historical Society* 38,2: 125–41; 39,2: 5–25; 40: 337–59; 41: 13–30, 235–54.
- Khanikoff, Nikolai (1845), *Bokhara: Its Amir and Its People*, translated by Clement A. de Bode. London: James Madden.
- Khanikoff, Nicolas de (1864), "Mémoire sur la partie méridionale de l'Asie centrale," in: *Recueil de voyages et de mémoires publié par la société de géographie* 7: 239–451.
- Khanikoff, Nicolas de (1866), *Mémoire sur l'ethnographie de Perse*. Paris: Société de Géographie.
- Khazeni, Arash (2012), "The River's Edge. The Steppes of the Near/Middle East and Central Asia, c. 1500–1800," in: *Is There a Middle East? The Evolution of a Geopolitical Concept*, edited by Michael E. Bonine, Abbas Amanat, Michael Ezekiel Gasper. Stanford: Stanford University Press: 139–51.
- Kheirabadi, Masoud (1991), *Iranian Cities: Formation and Development*. Austin: University of Texas.
- Kelly, John B. (1991), *Britain and the Persian Gulf 1795–1880*, repr. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Khusravī, Muḥammad Riẓā (1985), "Az Jām ta Harī," *Āyanda* 11,1–2: 94–98.
- Khusravī, Muḥammad Riẓā (1367/1988), *Kalāt-i Nādirī*. Mashhad: Āstān-i Quds.

- Kinneir, John MacDonald (1813), *A Geographical Memoir of the Persian Empire*. London: John Murray.
- Kislyakov, Nikolay Andreevich, Pershik, A.G. (eds.) (1957), *Narodi perednei Asii*. Moscow: IAN SSSR.
- Kleiss, W. (1987), "Die Karawanenwege in Iran aus Frühislamischer Zeit," in: *Transition Periods in Iranian History*. Louvain, Belgium: Association pour l'avancement des études iraniennes: 141–9.
- Kleiss, Wolfram (1996–2001), *Karawanenbauten in Iran*, 6 vols. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer.
- Klinkott, Manfred (1982), *Islamische Baukunst in Afghanistan-Sistan*. Berlin: Dietrich Reimer.
- Kohzad, Ahmad Ali (ca 1955), *Men and Events through 18th and 19th Century Afghanistan*. Kabul: Historical Society of Afghanistan, Publication No. 44.
- Kohzad, Ahmad Ali (1951–1954), "Along the Koh-i Bābā and Hari-Rud," in: *Afghanistan* 6–9; 9,2: 1–21.
- Kohzad, Ahmad Ali (1957), "Firuz Koh," in: *Afghanistan* 12,4.
- Komaki, Shōhei (1989), "The Revolt of Hōsein Qolī Khān Qājār, 1769–1777," in: *Orient* 25: 119–33.
- Komaki, Shohei (1995), "Khorasan in the Early 19th Century," in: *Journal of Sophia Asian Studies* 13: 79–108.
- König, Wolfgang (1962), *Die Achal-Teke. Zur Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft einer Turkmenen-Gruppe im XIX. Jh., Veröffentlichungen des Museums für Völkerkunde zu Leipzig*, vol. 12. Berlin: Akad. Verlag.
- Kramers, Johannes/Wiet, Gaston (transl.) (1964), *Configuration de la Terre (Kitāb Šūrat al-Ard) by B. Ḥauqal*. Paris: Maisonneuve.
- Krawulsky, Dorothea (1978), *Iran—Das Reich der Ilhane. Eine topographisch-historische Studie*. Wiesbaden: Dr. Ludwig Reichert.
- Krawulsky, Dorothea (1982, 1984), *Ḥorasan zur Timuridenzeit nach dem Tārīḥ-i Ḥāfez-e Abrū*, Vol. I (1982) *Edition und Einleitung*. Vol. II (1984) *Übersetzung und Ortsnamenkommentar*. Wiesbaden: Dr. Ludwig Reichert.
- Krawulsky, Dorothea (1989), *Mongolen und Ilkhane—Ideologie und Geschichte*. Beirut: Verlag für Islamische Studien.
- Kreutzmann, Hermann (1997), "Vom 'Great Game' zum 'Clash of Civilizations?'" Wahrnehmung und Wirkung von Imperialpolitik und Grenzziehungen in Zentralasien," in: *Petermanns Geographische Mitteilungen* 141: 163–86.
- Krusinski, Judasz Tadeusz (1973 [1740]), *The History of the Revolutions of Persia: taken from the Memoirs of Father Krusinski*, 2 vols. New York: Arno Press.
- Kügelgen, Anke von (1998), "Die Entfaltung der Naqšbandīya muğaddidiya im mittleren Transoxanien vom 18. bis zum Beginn des 19. Jahrhunderts: Ein Stück Detektivarbeit," in: *Muslim Culture in Russia and Central Asia from the 18th to the Early 20th centuries*, Vol. 2, *Inter-Regional and Inter-Ethnic Relations*, edited by Michael Kemper, Anke von Kügelgen, Allen J. Frank. Berlin: Klaus Schwarz: 101–151.
- Kuhzād, Aḥmad 'Alī (1941), *Risāla dar maskūkāt-i Afghānistān dar 'aṣr-i islām*. Kabul.
- Kuhzād, Aḥmad 'Alī (1949), "Hašt rivāyat dar bāb-i banā-yi shahr-i Harāt," in: *Āryānā* 7, 9: 7–12; 7,10: 1–5.
- Kunke, Marina (1991), *Nomadenstämme in Persien im 18. und 19. Jahrhundert*. Berlin: Schwarz.
- Kurkdjian, A.A. (1875–6), "La politique économique de la Russie en Orient et al commerce arménien au début du XVIII siècle," in: *Revue des Etudes Arméniennes* 11: 245–54.
- Kyas, P. Amand (1905), "Übersetzung ausgewählter Kapitel aus dem arabischen Geographen B. Rusta," in: *Jahresbericht des öffentlichen Stifts-Obergymnasiums der Benediktiner zu Braunau in Böhmen*. Braunau: 5–63.
- Lal, Mohan (1834), "A Brief Description of Herat," in: *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* 3: 9–18.
- Lal, Mohan (1977 [1846]), *Travel in the Punjab, Afghanistan and Turkistan to Balk, Bokhara and Herat and a Visit to Great Britain and Germany*, repr. Calcutta: K.P. Bagchi & Co.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1961), "Persian Society under the Qajars," in: *Journal of the Royal Central Asian Society* 48: 123–39.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1963), "The Office of Kalāntar under the Safawids and Afshars," in: *Mélanges d'orientalisme offerts à Henri Massé*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Dānishgāh-i Tīhrān: 206–18.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1968), "The Internal Structure of the Saljuq Empire," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 5, *The Saljuq and Mongol Periods*, edited by J. A. Boyle. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 203–82.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1970), "Persian Trade under the Early Qajars," in: *Islam and the Trade of Asia*, edited by Donald S. Richards. Oxford: Cassirer: 215–244.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1971), "The Case of Haji 'Abd al-Karim. A Study on the Role of the Merchant in Mid-Nineteenth-Century Persia," in: *Iran and Islam. In Memory of the Late Vladimir Minorsky*, edited by C. E. Bosworth. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press: 331–60.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1977a), "Aspects of Agricultural Organisation and Agrarian History in Persia," in: *Wirtschaftsgeschichte des Vorderen Orients in islamischer Zeit. Teil I, Handbuch der Orientalistik* 1.6.6.1. Leiden/Köln: Brill: 160–87.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1977b), "The Tribal Resurgence and the Decline of the Bureaucracy in Eighteenth-Century Persia," in: *Studies in Eighteenth Century Islamic History*, edited by Thomas Naff, Edward Roger Owen. Carbondale: Southern Illinois University Press: 108–32.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1978), "Early Timurid Theories of State: Hafiz Abru and Nizam al-Din Sami," in: *Bulletin d'Etudes Orientales* 30: 1–9.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1988a), *Continuity and Change in Medieval Persia. Aspects of Administrative, Economic and Social History, 11th–14th Century, Columbia Lectures on Iranian Studies*, Vol. 2. New York: Bibliotheca Persica.
- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1988b), *Qajar Persia*. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Lambton, Ann K.S. (1991 [1953]), *Landlord and Peasant in Persia. A Study of Land Tenure and Land Revenue Administration*, repr. London: I. B. Tauris.

- Lambton, Ann K. S. (1999), "Land Tenure and Revenue Administration in the Nineteenth Century," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 7, *From Nadir Shah to the Islamic Republic*, edited by Peter Avery, Gavin Hambly, Charles Melville. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 459–505.
- Landau, Justine (2011), "Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī and Poetic Imagination in the Arabic and Persian Philosophical Tradition," in: *Metaphor and Imagery in Persian Poetry*, edited by Ali Asghar Seyed Gohrab. Leiden: Brill: 15–62.
- Landwehr, Achim (2008), *Historische Diskursanalyse*. Frankfurt: Campus Verlag.
- Lang, David Marshall (1952), "Georgia and the Fall of the Safavi Dynasty," in: *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 14: 523–39.
- Lang, David Marshall (1957), *The Last Years of the Georgian Monarchy 1658–1832*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Langlès, Louis M. (1797), *Voyage de l'Inde à la Mekke par A'dboûl Kerým. Extrait et traduit de la version anglaise de ses mémoires*. Paris.
- Lārūdī, Nūrullāh (1369/1990), *Zindigānī-yi Nādir Shāh, pisar-i shamshīr*. Tehran: Īrān Zamīn.
- Lattimore, Owen (1962), *Studies in Frontier History*. Paris: Mouton.
- Le Strange, Guy (1905), *The Land of the Eastern Caliphate*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Le Strange, Guy (transl.) (1993 [1919]), *The Geographical Part of the Nuzhat-al-Qulūb Composed by Ḥamd-Allāh Mustawfī of Qazwīn in 740 (1340)*, repr. Frankfurt a.M.: Institute for the History of Arabic-Islamic Science at the Johann Wolfgang Goethe University.
- Lee, Jonathan L. (1987), "The History of Maimana in North-Western Afghanistan 1731–1893," in: *Iran* 25: 107–24.
- Lee, Jonathan L. (1996), *The 'Ancient Supremacy', Bukhara, Afghanistan, and the Battle for Balkh, 1731–1901*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Lee, Jonathan L. (2002), "The Armenians of Kabul and Afghanistan," in: *Cairo to Kabul. Afghan and Islamic Studies*, edited by Warwick Ball, Leonard Harrow. London: Melisende: 157–62.
- Lefebvre, Henri (2003 [1974]), *The Production of Space*, repr. Malden: Blackwell.
- Lentz, Thomas/Lowry, Glenn D. (1989), *Timur and the Princely Vision. Persian Art and Culture in the Fifteenth Century*. Washington: Smithsonian Press.
- Lerch, D. Johann Jacob (1776), "Nachricht von der zweiten Reise nach Persien," in: *Büschings Magazin* 10: 365–476.
- Lerch, P. I. (1873), "Khiva oder Kharezm: Seine historischen und geographischen Verhältnisse," in: *Russische Revue* 2,5–6: 445–84, 565–79.
- Leshnik, Lorenz S. (1968), "Ghor, Firuzkuh and the Minar-i Jam," in: *Central Asiatic Journal* 12,1: 36–49.
- "Lessar's Second Journey in the Turkoman Country – Askabad to Ghurian near Herat," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography*, New Monthly Series, 5,1 (Jan. 1883): 1–23.
- "Lessar's Journey from Askabad to Sarakhs," in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming. London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society, 1977: 215–232.
- Lessar, P. M. (1884), "Bemerkungen über Transkaspien und die benachbarten Landstriche", in: *Petermanns Geographische Mitteilungen* 30: 281–96.
- Lessar, P. M. (1885), "Aus Mittelasien: Merw und die an Afghanistan grenzenden Turkmenenstämme," in: *Das Ausland* 58: 518–20.
- Levi, Scott C. (1999), "India, Russia and the Eighteenth-Century Transformation of the Central Asian Caravan Trade", in: *Journal of the Social and Economic History of the Orient* 42,4: 537–40.
- Levi, Scott C. (2002), *The Indian Diaspora in Central Asia and Its Trade, 1550–1900*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Lézine, Alexandre (1963–64), "Herat, notes de voyage," in: *Bulletin d'études orientales*, 18: 127–45.
- Litten, W. (1920), *Persien. Von der "pénétration pacifique" zum "Protektorat". Urkunden und Tatsachen zu Geschichte der europäischen "pénétration pacifique" in Persien 1860–1919*. Berlin: de Gruyter.
- Lockhart, Laurence (1938), *Nadir Shah*. London: Luzac & Co.
- Lockhart, Laurence (1958), *The Fall of the Safavi Dynasty and the Afghan Occupation of Persia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lockhart, Laurence (1960), *Persian Cities*. London: Luzac & Co.
- Lomonosof, A. (1879), "Itinéraire de Patta-Kisar à Herat suivi en 1878 par le colonel Grodékof," in: *Bulletin de la Société de géographie*, Paris, ser. 6, 18: 563–8.
- Lorimer, J. G. (1908–1915), *Gazetteer of the Persian Gulf, Oman and Central Arabia*, 2 vols. Calcutta: Government Print.
- Luft, Paul (1968), "Iran unter Schah Abbas II (1629–1666)," PhD. diss., University of Göttingen.
- Luft, Paul (1975), "Strategische Interessen und Anleihenpolitik Rußlands in Iran," in: *Geschichte und Gesellschaft* 1,4: *Imperialismus im Nahen und Mittleren Osten*, edited by Wolfgang J. Mommsen. Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht: 506–538.
- Luft, Paul (1994), "Gottesstaat und höfische Gesellschaft," in: *Asien in der Neuzeit*, edited by Jürgen Osterhammel. Frankfurt a. M.: Fischer: 26–46.
- Lukonin, V. G. (1983), "Political, Social and Administrative Institutions: Taxes and Trade", in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 3 (2), edited by Ehsan Yarshater. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 681–747.
- Lumsden, H. B. (1860), *The Mission to Qandahar*. Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press.
- Lumsden, Peter S. (1885), "Countries and Tribes Bordering on the Koh-i-Baba Range," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* 5: 561–583.
- Lyusternik, Ye. Ya./Shapot, Ye. G. (1960), "Some Projects for the Organization of Russian Indian Trade in the 18th Century," in: *Central Asian Review* 8: 416–434.

- Ma'ānī, Aḥmad Gulchīn (1969), *Kārvān-i Hind*. Mashad: Āstān-i Quds-i-Raḡavī.
- McChesney, Robert D. (1981a), "Comments on the 'Qajar Uymaq in the Safavid Period, 1500–1722'," in: *Iranian Studies* 14,1–2: 87–105.
- McChesney, R. (1981b), "Waqfs and Public Policy: the Waqfs of Shāh 'Abbās, 1011–1023/1602–1614," in: *Asian and African Studies* 15: 165–90.
- McChesney, Robert D. (1988), "Four Sources on Shah 'Abbas's building of Isfahan," in: *Muqarnas* 5: 103–34.
- McChesney, Robert D. (1991), *Waqf in Central Asia*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.
- McChesney, Robert D. (1993), "The Conquest of Herat 995–6/1587–8: Sources for the Study of Safavid/Qizilbash – Shibani/Uzbek relations," in: *Etudes Safavides*, edited by Jean Calmard. Paris/Tehran: Institut Français de Recherche en Iran: 69–107.
- McChesney, Robert D. (1996), *Central Asia: Foundations of Change*. Princeton, N.J.: Darwin Press.
- McChesney, Robert D. (2001), "Reconstructing Balkh: The Waqfiya of 947/1540," in: *Studies on Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel*, edited by Devin DeWeese. Bloomington: Indiana University Publications: 187–243.
- McChesney, Robert D. (2001–2), "Architecture and Narrative: The Khwaja Abū Nasr Parsa Shrine," in: *Muqarnas* 18: 94–119, 19: 78–108.
- McChesney, Robert D. (2003), "The Central Asian Hajj-Pilgrimage in the Time of the Early Modern Empires," in: *Safavid Iran and Her Neighbors*, edited by Michel Mazzaoui. Salt Lake City: University of Utah Press: 129–56.
- McChesney, Robert D. (2009), "The Chinggisid Restoration in Central Asia: 1500–1785," in: *The Cambridge History of Inner Asia: The Chinggisid Age*, edited by Nicola di Cosmo, Allen J. Frank, Peter B. Golden. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 277–302.
- McChesney, Robert D. & Khorrami, Mohammad Mehdi (transl.) (2013), *The History of Afghanistan: Fayz Muḥammad Kātib Hazārah's Sirāj al-tawārīkh*, 6 vols. Leiden: Brill.
- McDaniel, Robert A (1971), "Economic Change and Economic Resiliency in 19th Century Persia," in: *Iranian Studies* 4,1: 36–49.
- MacGregor, Charles M. (1871a), *Central Asia, Part II, A Contribution towards the Better Knowledge of the Topography, Ethnology, Resources and History of Afghanistan*. Calcutta: Government Printing.
- MacGregor, Charles M. (1871b), *Central Asia, Part IV, A Contribution towards the Better Knowledge of the Topography, Ethnography, Resources and History of Persia*. Calcutta: Government Printing.
- MacGregor, Charles M. (1879), *Narrative of a Journey through the Province of Khorassan in 1875*, 2 vols. London: W. H. Allen & Co.
- Maitra, K. M. (transl.) (1970 [1934]), *A Persian Embassy to China; Being an Extract from Zubdatu't-Tawarikh of Hafiz Abru*. New York: Paragon Book Reprint Corp.
- Malcolm, John (1829), *The History of Persia from the Most Early Period to the Present Time*, 2nd ed., 2 vols. London: John Murray.
- Maliki, Abbas (1994), "Iran's Northeastern Borders: from Sarakhs to Khazar (the Caspian Sea)," in: *The Boundaries of Modern Iran*, edited by Keith McLachlan. London: UCL Press, 11–20.
- Malleson, George B. (1984 [1878]), *History of Afghanistan from the Earliest Period to the Outbreak of the War of 1878*. Peshawar: Saeed Book Bank.
- Malleson, George B. (1880), *Herat: the Granary and Garden of Central Asia*. London: W. H. Allen & Co.
- Mann, Oskar (ed.) (1891, 1896), *Das Das Muḥmil et-tārīkh-i ba'dnadādirīje des Ibn Muḥammad Emīn Abu'l-Ḥasan aus Gulistāne*, 2 vols. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Mann, Oskar (1898), "Quellenstudien zur Geschichte des Aḥmed Šāh Durrānī," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 52: 97–186, 323–357.
- Du Mans, Raphael (1890), *Estat de la Perse en 1660*, edited by Charles Schefer. Paris: Ernest Leroux.
- Manucci, Niccolao (1907–8), *Storia do Mogor, or Mogul India, 1653–1708*, 4 vols., translated by W. Irvine. London: John Murray.
- Manz, Beatrice F. (1976), "Administration and the Delegation of Authority in Temür's Dominions," in: *Central Asiatic Journal* 20: 191–207.
- Manz, Beatrice F. (2000), "Mongol History Rewritten and Relived," in: *Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée* 89–90: 129–49.
- Manz, Beatrice F. (2005), "Nomad and Settled in the Timurid Military," in: *Mongols, Turks and Others: Eurasian Nomads and the Sedentary World*, edited by Reuven Amitai and Michal Biran. Leiden: Brill: 425–57.
- Manz, Beatrice F. (2007), *Power, Politics and Religion in Timurid Iran*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Manz, Beatrice F. (2009), "Temür and the early Timurids to c. 1450," in: *The Cambridge History of Inner Asia: The Chinggisid Age*, edited by Nicola di Cosmo, Allen J. Frank, Peter B. Golden. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 182–198.
- Marcinkowski, Christoph (2002), *Mirza Rafi'a's Dastur al-Muluk: A Manual of Later Safavid Administration. Annotated English Translation, Comments on the Offices and Services, and Facsimile of the Unique Persian Manuscript*. Kuala Lumpur: International Institute of Islamic Thought and Civilisation.
- Maricq, André/Wiet, Gaston (1959), *Le minaret de Djam. La découverte de la capitale des Sultans Ghorides*. Paris: C. Klincksieck.
- Markham, Clements R. (1879), "The Basin of the Hilmend," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographic Society* 1: 191–201.
- Markham, Clements R. (1977 [1874]), *A General Sketch of the History of Persia*, repr. Nendeln/Liechtenstein: Kraus Reprint.
- Marquart, J. (1901), *Ērānšahr nach der Geographie des Ps. Moses Xorenac'i*. Berlin: Weidmann.
- Marsh, Hippisley Cunliffe (1877), *A Ride through Islam. Being an Overland Journey to India and Khorasan, Herat and Afghanistan in the year 1872*. London: Tinsley.

- Martin, Vanessa (1996), "An Evaluation of Reform and Development of the State in the Early Qajar Period," in: *Die Welt des Islams* 36: 1–24.
- Marvin, Charles (1880), *Colonel Grodekoff's Ride from Samarcand to Herat through Balkh and the Uzbek States of Afghan Turkestan*. London: W. H. Allen.
- Marvin, Charles (1881), *Merv, the Queen of the World; and the Scourge of the Man-Stealing Turcomans*. London: W. H. Allen & Co.
- Marvin, Charles (1884), *Reconnoitring Central Asia: Pioneering Adventures in the Region Lying between Russia and India*. London: W. Swan Sonnenschein & Co.
- Marvin, Charles Thomas (1978 [1883]), *The Russians at Merv and Herat*. London: W. H. Allen & Co.
- Masson, Charles (1974 [1842]), *Narrative of Various Journeys in Belochistan, Afghanistan and the Panjab*, 3 vols., repr. Karachi: Oxford University Press.
- Masson, Charles (1843), *Narrative of a Journey to Kalat*. London: Bentley.
- Masson, M. (1948), "K istoricheskoi topografii Gerata XV veka," in: *Velikii uzbekskii poet. Sbornik statei pord red. M. T. Aibeka*. Tashkent: 120–45.
- Masson, Vadim M./Romodin, Vadim A. (1964–1965) *Istoriia Afghanistana*, 2 vols. Moscow: Izdat. Nauka.
- Matthee, Rudolph P. (1991), "Politics and Trade in late Safavid Iran: Commercial Crisis and Government Reaction under Shah Solayman (1666–1694)," PhD diss., University of California, Los Angeles.
- Matthee, Rudolph P. (1994), "Administrative Stability and Change in Late-17th-Century Iran: The Case of Shaykh 'Alī Khan Zanganah (1669–89)," in: *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 26: 77–98.
- Matthee, Rudolph P. (1996), "Unwalled Cities and Restless Nomads: Firearms and Artillery in Safavid Iran," in: *Safavid Persia, Pembroke Persian Papers*, Vol. 4, edited by Charles Melville. London: I. B. Tauris: 389–416.
- Matthee, Rudolph P. (1999), *The Politics of Trade of Safavid Iran: Silk for Silver*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Matthee, Rudolph P. (2000), "Between Venice and Surat: The Trade in Gold in Late Safavid Iran," in: *Modern Asian Studies* 34: 231–65.
- Matīn-i Andkhūy, Muḥammad Amīn (1999), *Andkhūy va jāyghāh-i ān dar tārikh*. Peshawar.
- Ma'ṭūfī, Asadullāh (1374/1995), *Astarābād va Gurgān dar bastar-i tārikh-i Īrān: Nigāhī ba 5000 sāl tārikh-i manṭiqa*. Mashhad: Intishārāt-i Dirakhshish.
- Māyil Haravī, Rizā (1348/1969a), *Mīrzāyan-i Barnābād*. Kabul: Anjuman-i Tārikh.
- Māyil Haravī, Rizā (1969b), "Chand athar-i bāstānī az shāhkārhā-yi hunar-i tīmūriyān-i Harāt," in: *Sukhan* 19,8: 795–802.
- Māyil Haravī, Rizā (n.d.), "Az shāhkārhā-yi hunar-i tīmūriyān-i Harāt: Miḥrāb-i zībā-yi masjid-i daura-yi Shāh Rokh Mīrzā," in: *Hunar va Mardum* No. 7: 50–52.
- Mazzaoui, Michel (1972), *The Origins of the Ṣafawids, Šī'ism, Ṣufism and the Ġulat*. *Freiburger Islamstudien*, Vol. 3. Wiesbaden: Steiner.
- Mazzaoui, Michel (1977), "From Tabriz to Qazwin to Isfahan: The phases of Safavid History," in *XILX Deutscher Orientalistentag vom 28. September bis 4. Oktober 1975 in Freiburg im B., Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft Supplement* 3,1: 514–22.
- Mazzoui, Michel (2003), *Safavid Iran and Her Neighbors*. Salt Lake City: University of Utah Press.
- Meier, Fritz (1976), *Abū Sa'īd-i Abū al-Hayr: 357–440/967–1049; Wirklichkeit und Legende*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Melville, Charles (1990), "The Itineraries of Sultan Öljeitü, 1304–16," in: *Iran* 28: 55–70.
- Melville, Charles (1993a), "From Qars to Qandahar: the Itineraries of Shah 'Abbas I (995–1038/1587–1629)," in: *Etudes Safavides*, edited by Jean Calmard. Paris/Tehran: Institut Français de Recherche en Iran: 195–224.
- Melville, Charles (1993b), "The Persian Famine of 1870–2: Prices and Politics," in: *Food, Diet and Economic Change Past and Present*, edited by Catherine Geissler. Leicester: Leicester University Press: 133–50.
- Melville, Charles (1996), "Shah 'Abbas and the Pilgrimage to Mashhad," in: *Safavid Persia, Pembroke Persian Papers*, Vol. 4, edited by Charles Melville. London: I. B. Tauris: 191–229.
- Membré, Michele (1993), *Mission to the Lord Sophy of Persia (1539–1542)*, translated with introduction and notes by A. H. Morton. London: School of Oriental and African Studies.
- Meredith, Colin (1971), "Early Qajar Administration: An Analysis of Its Development and Functions," in: *Iranian Studies* 4,2–3: 59–84.
- Meserve, Ruth I. (1993), "A Description of the Position of Turkmen Tribal Leaders according to 19th Century Western Travellers," in: *Altaica Berolinensia. The Concept of Sovereignty in the Altaic World. Permanent International Altaistic Conference, 34th Meeting*, Berlin 21–26 July, 1991, edited by Barbara Kellner-Heinkele. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz: 139–48.
- Meyendorff, E. K. (1975), *Puteshestvie iz Orenburga v Bukharu*, Russian translation by N. A. Khalfin. Moscow: Nauka.
- Meyendorff, George de (1826), *Voyage d'Orenbourg à Boukhara: fait en 1820 à travers les steppes qui s'étendent à l'est de la Mer d'Aral et au-delà de l'ancien Jaxartes*. Paris: Dondey-Dupré.
- Miftāḥ, Ilhāma (1376/1997), *Jughrāfiyā-yi tārikhī-yi Balkh va Jaiḥūn va muḏāfāt-i an*. Tehran: Pazhūhishgāh-i 'Ulūm-i Insānī va Muṭāla'āt-i Farhangī.
- Migeod, Heinz-Georg (1990), *Die persische Gesellschaft unter Nasiru'd-Din Sah (1848–1896)*. Berlin: Schwarz.
- Migeod, Heinz-Georg (2006), *Das persische Volk im Wandel: Studien zur Sozialgeschichte der Zeit von Nasiru'd-Din Sah (1848–1896)*. Berlin: Schwarz.

- Mīhrabān, 'Abdullāh (1362/1983), "Taḥqīq-i pīrāmūn-i ḥayāt-i ijtīmā'ī va siyāsī-yi Jamshīdīhā," in: *Milliyathā-yi barādar* 3: 34–7.
- Minorsky, Vladimir F. (1934), "Esquisse d'une histoire de Nadir-chah," in: *Publications de la Société des Etudes Iraniennes et de l'Art Persan*, No. 10. Paris: Leroux: 1–46.
- Minsorsky, Vladimir F. (1956), "The Older Preface to the Shāh-Nāma," in: *Studi Orientalistici in onore di Giorgio Levi Della Vida*, Vol 2. Rome: Istituto per L'Oriente: 159–79.
- Minorsky, Vladimir F. (1957), *Persia in A.D. 1478–1490: An Abridged Translation of Faḡlullāh b. Rūzbihān Khunjī's Tārīkh-i 'ālamārā-yi Amīnī*, Royal Asiatic Society Monographs, Vol. 26. London: Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland.
- Minorsky, Vladimir F. (1978), "The Turkish Dialect of the Khalaj," in *Ibid.*: *The Turks, Iran and the Caucasus in the Middle Ages*. London: Variorum Reprints, 417–37.
- Minorsky, Vladimir F. (1980 [1943]), *A Manual of Safavid Administration*, London. 2. ed. Cambridge.
- Minorsky, Vladimir F. (1982), *Medieval Iran and Its Neighbours*. London: Variorum Reprints.
- Minorsky, Vladimir F. (1992 [1957]), *Persia in A.D. 1478–1490: An Abridged Translation of Faḡlullāh b. Rūzbihān Khunjī's Tārīkh-i 'ālamārā-yi Amīnī*. Revised and augmented by John E. Woods. London: Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland.
- Mitchell, Colin P. (2009), *The Practice of Politics in Safavid Iran*. London/New York: I.B. Tauris.
- Mīr Aḥmadī, Maryam (1369/1991), *Dīn va daulat dar 'aṣr-i ṣafavī*. Tehran: Amīr Kabīr.
- Mīr Niyā, 'Alī (1366/1987), *Ṭavāyif-i turkmān dar dasht-i Gurgān va Khurāsān*. Mashhad: Intishārāt-i Aṭlas.
- Mīr Niyā, Sayyid 'Alī (1369/1990), *Īlhā va tāyifāhā-yi 'ashāyir-i Khurāsān*. Tehran.
- Mīr Niyā, Sayyid 'Alī (1373/1994), *Vaqāyī 'i khāvar-i Īrān*, Vol. 1, *Daura-yi qājār*, 2nd ed. Mashhad: Ardashīr.
- De Modave, Comte (1971), *Voyage en Inde du Comte de Modave, 1773–1776*, edited by J. Deloche. Paris: Ecole française d'Extrême Orient, 1971.
- Mojtahed-Zadeh, Pirouz (1994), "The Eastern Boundaries of Iran," in: *The Boundaries of Modern Iran*, edited by Keith McLachlan. London: UCL Press, 128–39.
- Mojtahed-Zadeh, Pirouz (2004), *Small Players of the Great Game. The Settlement of Iran's Eastern Borderlands and the Creation of Afghanistan*. London & New York: Routledge Curzon.
- Montgomery, Sir Robert (comp.) (1862), *Report on the Trade and Resources of the Countries on the North-Western Boundary of British India*. Lahore: Government Press.
- Mordtmann, A. D. (transl.) (1847), *Das Buch der Länder von Schech Ebu Ishak el-Farsi el-Isztachri*. Hamburg: Rauhes Haus.
- Moreen, Vera B. (1986), "The Problems of Conversion among the Iranian Jews in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries," in: *Iranian Studies* 29.
- Moreen, Vera B. (1990), *Iranian Jewry during the Afghan Invasion*. Stuttgart: Franz Steiner.
- Morgan, David (1988), *Medieval Persia 1040–1797*. London: Longman.
- Morgan, E. Delmar (1874), "The Russian Province of Amu Daria," in: *The Geographical Magazine* 1,2: 55–7.
- Morgan, E. Delmar (ed.) (1964 [1886]), *Early Voyages and Travels to Russia and Persia, by Anthony Jenkinson and Other Englishmen*. New York: Franklin.
- Morton, A. H. (1996), "The Early Years of Shah Ismā'īl in the *Afzal al-tavārīkh* and Elsewhere," in: *Safavid Persia, Pembroke Papers* 4, edited by Charles Melville. London: I. B. Tauris: 27–51.
- Moser, Heinrich (1888), *Durch Central-Asien: die Kirgisensteppes, Russisch-Turkestan, Bochara, Chiwa, das Turkmenenland und Persien*. Leipzig: Brockhaus.
- Mostofi, Abdollah (1997 [1943]), *The Administrative and Social History of the Qajar Period*, Vol. 1, *From Agha Muḥammad Khan to Naser ed-Din Shah (1794–1896)*, translated by Nayer Mostofi Glenn. Costa Mesa: Mazda Publishers.
- Mounsey, Augustus H. (1872), *A Journey through the Caucasus and the Interior of Persia*. London: Smith Elder.
- Mujtahidzāda, Pīrūz (1378/1999), "Naqsh-i Inglīstān dar chīgūnagī-yi shaklgīrī-yi marzhā-yi Īrān va Afghānistān," *Tārīkh-i mu 'aṣir-i Īrān*. 3, 12: 43–92.
- Mukminova, Razia G. (1996), "Les routes caravanières entre villes de l'Inde et de l'Asie centrale: déplacements des artisans et circulation des articles artisanaux," in: *Cahiers d'Asie centrale* 1,2: 85–124.
- Müller, Hans (1964), *Die Chronik Ḥulāṣat at-tawārīḥ des Qāzī Aḥmad Qumī. Der Abschnitt über Schah 'Abbās*. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner.
- Muqaddam Marāgha, Raḥmatullāh (1965), "Fath-i Harāt: urdūkashī-yi inglīshā," in: *Nigīn* 1,10: 7–8, 88–94.
- Nabi Khan, Ahmad (1983), *Multan: History and Architecture*. Islamabad: Institute of Islamic History, Culture & Civilization, Islamic University.
- Nagel, Tilmann (1993), *Timur der Eroberer und die islamische Welt des späten Mittelalters*. München: C. H. Beck.
- Naimi, A. A. (1949), "Un regard sur Ghor," in: *Afghanistan* 4, 4.
- Najimi, Abdul Wasay (1982), "The Cistern of Char-Suq (A Safavid Building in Herat Built after 1634 AD)," in: *Afghanistan Journal* 9,2: 38–41.
- Najimi, Abdul Wasay (1988), *Herat. The Islamic City*, Scandinavian Institute of Asian Studies. Occasional Papers, No. 2. Curzon Press: Richmond.
- Najmī, Nāṣir (1336/1957) *Īrān dar miyān-i tūfān yā sharḥ-i zindagānī-yi 'Abbās Mīrzā Nāyib al-Saltāna va janghā-yi Īrān va Rūs*. Tehran: Kānūn-i Ma'rīfat.

- Najmī, Nāṣir (1364/1985), “Hāditha-yi judā shudan-i Harāt az Īrān ba intizā‘-i Marv va Khīva bī irtibāt nīst,” in: *Kaihān-i farhangī* 2,11: 33–5.
- Najmī, Nāṣir (1368/1989), *Fātiḥ-i Harāt: Sultān Murād Mīrzā Husām al-Saltāna*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Gulshā‘ī.
- Napier, G. C. (1876), “Extracts from a Diary of a Tour in Khorassan and Notes on the Eastern Alburz Tract,” in: *Journal of the Royal Geographic Society* 46: 62–171.
- Napier, G. C. (1977), “Notes on the Eastern Alburz Tract,” in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming. London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society: 71–81.
- Navā‘ī, ‘Abd al-Ḥusain (1324/1945), *Rijāl-i kitāb-i Ḥabīb al-siyar: az ḥamla-yi mughūl tā marg-i Shāh Ismā‘īl-i avval*. Tehran: Majalla-yi Yādgar.
- Navā‘ī, ‘Abd al-Ḥusain (1366/1987), *Īrān va jahān az mughul ta qājārīya*, 2nd ed. Tehran: Mu‘assasa-yi Nashr-i Humā.
- Nayyir, M. A. (1965), “Harāt,” in: *Āryānā* 23: 283–305.
- Nayyir Nūrī, Ḥamīd, (1951), “Muzhda-yi fath-i Harāt va khabar-i durūghīn-i faut-i Ḥusām al-Saltāna, fātiḥ-i Harāt dar yak mauqī‘ ba Ṭīhrān rasīd,” in: *Ittilā‘āt-i māhāna*, 3,9: 22–5.
- Nayyir Sīnā, Hidāyat (1351/1972), “Dirakhshāntarīn chihra-yi darbār-i Harāt,” in: *Dānishkada-yi Adabiyāt* 19,3–4: 111–132.
- Newman, Andrew J. (2006), *Safavid Iran. Rebirth of a Persian Empire*. London: I.B. Tauris.
- Niedermayer, Oskar von (1924), *Afghanistan*, edited by O. von Niedermayer and E. Diez. Leipzig: Verlag Karl W. Hiersemann.
- Niedermayer, Oskar von (1925), *Im Weltkrieg vor Indiens Toren—Der Wüstenzug der deutschen Expedition nach Persien und Afghanistan*. Hamburg: Hanseatische Verlagsanstalt.
- Noelle, Christine (1995): “The Anti-Wahhabi Reaction in Nineteenth-Century Afghanistan,” in: *Muslim World*, 85 (1–2): 23–48.
- Noelle, Christine (1997), *State and Tribe in Nineteenth-Century Afghanistan: The Reign of Amir Dost Muḥammad Khan (1826–1863)*. Richmond: Curzon.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2001), “Es ist ein weiter Weg nach Buḥārā. Raum-Zeit Koordinaten in der Sichtweise afghanischer Chroniken,” in: *Narrated Space in the Literature of the Islamic World*, edited by Roxane Haag-Higuchi, Christian Szyska. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag: 131–48.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2008a), “Khurasan and Its Limits: Changing Concepts of Territory from Pre-Modern to Modern Times,” in *Iran und iranisch geprägte Kulturen Studien zum 65. Geburtstag von Bert G. Fragner*, edited by Markus Ritter, Ralph Kauz, Birgitt Hoffmann. Wiesbaden: Ludwig Reichert: 9–19.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2008b), “Jamšīdī,” *E.Ir.* XIV: 528–31.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2010), “Kāmran b. Shah Maḥmūd,” *E. Ir.* 15: 439–40.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2012), “‘Different in All Respects’: Bukhara and Khiva as Viewed by Kaḡār Envoys,” in: *Şehrâyîn. Illuminating the Ottoman World: Perceptions, Encounters and Boundaries. Festschrift Hans Georg Majer*, edited by Yavuz Köse. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag: 435–446.
- Noelle-Karimi, Christine (2013), “The Abdali Pashtuns between Multan, Qandahar and Herat in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries,” in: *Beyond Swat: History, Society and Economy along the Afghanistan-Pakistan Frontier*, edited by Benjamin Hopkins and Magnus Marsden. London: C. Hurst & Co.: 31–8, 270–2.
- O’Donovan, Edmund (1970 [1882]), *The Merv Oasis. Travels and Adventures East of the Caspian during the Years 1879–80–81*, repr. New York: Arno Press.
- O’Donovan, E. (1977), “Merv and Its Surroundings,” in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming. London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society: 193–214.
- D’Ohsson, Constantin (1834), *Histoire des Mongols, depuis Tchinguiz-khan jusqu’a Timur Bey ou Tamerlan*, 4 vols. La Haye/Amsterdam: Van Cleef.
- O’Kane, Bernard (1976), “The Madrasa Al-Ghiyāsīyya at Khargird,” in: *Iran* 14: 79–92.
- O’Kane, Bernard (1979), “Turbat-i Jām and Timurid Vaulting,” in: *Iran* 17: 87–104.
- O’Kane, Bernard (1987), *Timurid Architecture in Khorasan*. Costa Mesa: Mazda Publishers.
- Okazaki, S. (1986), “The Great Persian Famine of 1870–1871,” in: *Bulletion of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 49: 183–192.
- Olearius, Adam (1971 [1656]), *Vermehrte neue Beschreibung der Muscowitischen und Persischen Reyse sodurch gelegenheit einer holsteinischen Gesandtschaft an den Russischen Zaar und König in Persien geschehen*, facs. repr. Tübingen: Wiemeyer.
- Ott, Ursula (1974), *Transoxanien und Turkestan zu Beginn des 16. Jahrhunderts: Das Mihmān-nāma-yi Buḥārā des Faḍlallāh b. Rūzbihān Ḥunḡī*. Freiburg i. Br.: Schwarz, 1974.
- Ouseley, William (1799), *Epitome of the Ancient History of Persia. Extracted and Translated from the Jehan Ara, a Persian Manuscript*. London: Cadell and Davies.
- Ouseley, William (1819–1823), *Travels in Various Countries of the East, More Particularly Persia: A Work Wherein the Author Has Described, as Far as His Own Observations Extended, the State of those Countries in 1810, 1811, and 1812*, 3 vols. London: Rodwell and Martin.
- Ouseley, Sir Gore (ed., transl.) (1846), *Biographical Notices of Persian Poets; with Critical and Explanatory Remarks*. London: Oriental Translation Fund.
- Pahlen, Constantin von der (1964), *Mission to Turkestan*, edited by Richard A. Pierce. London: Oxford University Press.
- Pakravan, Emīneh (1973), *Abbas Mīrzā*. Paris: Buchet/Chastel.
- Parmu, R. K. (1969), *A History of Muslim Rule in Kashmir*. Delhi: People’s Publishing House.

- Parvanta, Angela (2002), "Afghanistan—Land of the Afghans? On the Genesis of a Problematic State Denomination," in: *Afghanistan—A Country without a State?*, edited by Christine Noelle-Karimi, Conrad Schetter, Reinhard Schlagintweit. Frankfurt: 17–25.
- Patai, Raphael (1997), *Jadid al-Islam. The Jewish "New Muslims" of Meshhed*. Detroit: Wayne State University Press.
- Patterson, Michael O'Rourke (1988), *A partial translation of 'Ayn al-Vaqayī' (Wellspring of Events): The third of twelve works in 'Bahr al-fawa'id: Kulliyat-i Riyazi' (Unlimited Benefits: The Complete Works of Riyazi) of Muḥammad Yusof*, Master's thesis, New York University.
- Paul, Jürgen (1996), *Herrscher, Gemeinwesen, Vermittler: Ostiran und Transoxanian in vormongolischer Zeit*. Stuttgart: Steiner.
- Paul, Jürgen (2002), "Nomaden in persischen Quellen," in: *Nomadismus aus der Perspektive der Begrifflichkeit, Orientwissenschaftliche Hefte* 3: 41–56.
- Pavlova, I. K. (1986), "Maloizvestnyi istochnik po istorii Irana 30-kh godov XVII v.," in: *Narody Azii i Afriki* 6: 96–102.
- Pavlovich, M. (1910), "La situation agraire en Perse à la veille de la révolution," in: *Revue du monde musulman* 10: 616–25.
- Pelsaert, Francisco (1925), *Jahangir's India: The Remonstratie of Francisco Pelsaert*, translated by William Harrison Moreland and Pieter Geyl. Cambridge: W. Heffer & Sons.
- Perry, John R. (1971), "The Last Safavids, 1722–1793," in: *Iran* 9: 59–69.
- Perry, John R. (1975), "Forced Migration in Iran during the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries," in: *Iranian Studies* 8: 199–215.
- Perry, John R. (1979), *Karim Khan Zand. A History of Iran from 1747–1779*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Petrushevsky, N. G. (1880), "Die Turkmenen zwischen dem alten Bett des Amu Darja und der Nordgrenze Persiens," in: *Zeitschrift für wissenschaftliche Geographie* 1.
- Peyssonel, Charles (1756), *An Historical Account of the Present Troubles of Persia and Georgia*. London: R. Baldwin.
- Philott, Douglas C. (1912), *Memoirs of Shāh Ṭahmāsp*. Calcutta: Asiatic Society.
- Piemontese, M. (1969), "An Italian Source for the History of Qajar Persia: the Reports of General Enrico Andreini (1871–1886)," in: *East and West* 19.
- Planhol, Xavier de (1973), "Sur la frontière Turkmène de l'Afghanistan," in: *Revue géographique de l'est* 1973/1–2: 1–16.
- Poggi, Gianfranco (1978), *The Development of the Modern State*. Stanford: Stanford UP.
- Polak, Jakob Eduard (1860), "Über die Communicationsmittel, die Sicherheit des Eigentums und der Reisenden und über Asyle in Persien," *Mitteilungen der kaiserlich königlichen Geographischen Gesellschaft am 4. Dezember 1860*, Wien: 40–64.
- Polak, Jakob Eduard (1976 [1865]), *Persien, das Land und seine Bewohner. Ethnographische Schilderungen*, repr. Hildesheim/New York: Olms.
- Potter, Lawrence G. (1992), "The Kart Dynasty of Herat: Religion and Politics in Medieval Iran," PhD diss., Columbia University.
- Potter, Lawrence G. (1994), "Sufis and Sultans in Post-Mongol Iran," in: *Iranian Studies* 27, 1: 77–102.
- Pottinger, Henry (1886 [1816]), *Travels in Beloochistan and Sind*, repr. Karachi: Indus Publ.
- Poujol, Catherine (1984), "Le géodésiste russe et le Châh de Perse, Khiva 1740," in: *Moyen Orient & Océan Indien* 1: 86–100.
- Poullada, L. B./Poullada, Leila D. J. (1995), *The Kingdom of Afghanistan and the United States 1828–1973*. Omaha: Center for Afghanistan Studies at the University of Nebraska.
- Power, Daniel/Standen, Naomi (1999), "Introduction," in: *Frontiers in Question. Eurasian Borderlands, 700–1700*, edited by Daniel Power and Naomi Standen. London: MacMillan Press: 1–31.
- Price, D. (1821), *Chronological Retrospect, or Memoirs of the Principal Events of Mohammedan History*, 3 vols. London: Booth.
- Priestly, Henry (1981 [1874]), *Afghanistan and Its Inhabitants. Translated from the Hayat-i-Afghani of Muhammad Hayat Khan*. Lahore: Sang-e-Meel.
- Pugachenkova, G. A. (1970), "The Architecture of Central Asia at the Time of the Timurids," in: *Afghanistan* 12,3–4: 15–27.
- Quddūsī, Muḥammad Ḥusain (1339/1960), *Nādirnāma*. Mashhad: Chāpkhāna-yi Khurāsān.
- Quade-Reutter, Karin (2003), "...Denn sie haben einen unvollkommenen Verstand"—*Herrschaftliche Damen im Grossraum Iran in der Mongolen- und Timuridenzeit (ca 1250–1507)*. Aachen: Shaker Verlag.
- Rabino, Hyacinth L. (1928), *Mázandarān and Astarābād*. London: Luzac.
- Radde, Gustav (1898), *Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der im Jahre 1886 allherhöchst befohlenen Expedition nach Transkaspien und Nord-Chorassan, Petermanns geographische Mitteilungen, Ergänzungsband 27*, Gotha.
- Ra'īs al-Sādāt, Sayyid Ḥusain (1365/1986), "Tārīkh-i Shahrhā-yi Khurāsān: Marv," in: *Tahqīqāt-i jughrāfiyā* 1: 187–198; 2: 215–27; "Harāt," 3: 149–56.
- Ramazani, Rouhollah Kargar (1966), *The Foreign Policy of Iran 1500–1941*. Charlottesville: University Press of Virginia.
- Ranjbar, Aḥmad (1363/1984), *Khurāsān-i buzurg: baḥthī pūrāmūn-i chand shahr az Khurāsān-i buzurg*. Tehran: Mu'assasa-yi Intishārāt-i Amīr Kabīr.
- Ranking, G. S. A. (transl.) (1989 [1897–1910]), *Aḥsan-u-t-taqāsīm fī ma'rifati-l-aqālīm, Known as al-Muqaddasi*, repr. Frankfurt: Institut für Geschichte der Arabisch-Islamischen Wissenschaften.
- Rastogi, Ram Sagar (1965), *Indo-Afghan Relations 1880–1900*. Lucknow: Nav-Jyoti Press.
- Rathjens, Carl (1962), "Karawanenwege und Pässe im Kulturlandschaftswandel Afghanistans seit dem 19. Jahrhundert," in: *Hermann von Wissmann Festschrift*. Tübingen: Geographisches Institut Tübingen.
- Raverty, Henry George (1876), "On the Turks, Tatars and Mughals," in: *Travaux de la 3me session du Congrès International des Orientalistes*, St. Petersburg: 73–124.

- Rawlinson, Henry C. (1871), "Report on the Dooranee Tribes," in: *Central Asia*, edited by Charles M. MacGregor, Vol. 2. Calcutta: Government of India Publication: 823–869.
- Rawlinson, Henry (1977), "The Road to Merv," in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming. London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society: 89–123.
- Ray, Sukumar (1948), *Humāyūn in Persia. The Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal, Monograph Series*, Vol. 6. Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal.
- Raza, M. Hanif (1988), *Multan: Past & Present*. Islamabad: Colorpix.
- Rāzavī, Muḥammad Taqī Mudarris (1378/1999), *Sālshumār-i vaqāyi'-i Mashhad*, edited by Īraj Afshār. Mashhad: Āstān-i Quds.
- Rāzavī, Muḥammad Taqī Mudarris et.al. (1386/2007), *Mashhad dar āghāz-i qarn-i chahārdah-i khūshīdī*. Mashhad: Āhang-i Qalam.
- Reid, James J. (1978), "The Qajar Uymaq in the Safavid Period, 1500–1722," in: *Iranian Studies* 10: 117–43.
- Reid, James J. (1981), "Rebellion and Social Change in Astarabad, 1537–1744," *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 13: 35–53.
- Reindke, Gisela (1976), "Genese, Form und Funktion afghanischer Städte," PhD diss., Freie Universität Berlin.
- Reisner, I. (1981), "Specific Features of the Development of Feudalism among the Afghans," in: *Afghanistan: Past and Present, Oriental Studies in the USSR*, No. 3, Moscow: Academy of Sciences: 45–59.
- Reshtia, Sayed Qassem (1957), *Afghānistān dar qarn-i nuzdah*, 2nd ed. Kabul: Government Press.
- Reshtia, Sayed Qassem (1990), *Between Two Giants: Political History of Afghanistan in the Nineteenth Century*, translation of *Afghanistan dar qarn-i nuzdah*. Peshawar: Afghan Jehad Works Translation Centre.
- Rettelbach, Gerhard (1978), *Ḥulāṣat as-Siyar. Der Iran unter Schah Ṣaḡī (1629–1642) nach der Chronik des Muḥammad Ma'šūm b. Ḥuāḡagī Isfahānī*. München: Dr. Dr. Rudolf Trofnik.
- Riazul Islam (1966), "The Bahr al-Asrar. A Note on the Travel Portion," in: *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 14,2: 93–7.
- Riazul Islam (1970), *Indo-Persian Relations. A Study of the Political and Diplomatic Relations between the Mughal Empire and Iran*. Tehran: Iranian Cultural Foundation.
- Riazul Islam (1979), *A Calendar of Documents on Indo-Persian Relations (1500–1750)*, 2 vols. Tehran: Iranian Culture Foundation.
- Riazul Islam (ed.) (1980), *The Baḥr ul-Asrār by Maḥmūd b. Amīr Walī Balkhī*, partial edition. Karachi: Institute of Central & West Asian Studies.
- Richard, Francis (ed.) (1995), *Raphael du Mans missionnaire en Perse au XVII^e s*, 2 vols. Paris: Ed. L'Harmattan.
- Richtsfeld, Bruno (1985), *Die Aufzeichnungen des Ch'en Ch'eng und Li Hsien über ihre Gesandtschaftsreise nach Herat. Ein chinesischer Beitrag zur Kenntnis Mittelasiens im 15. Jahrhundert*. Master's thesis, Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität München.
- Ricks, T. M. (1973), "Towards a Social and Economic History of Eighteenth-Century Iran," in: *Iranian Studies* 6,2–3: 110–26.
- Ricks, T. M. (1975), *Politics and Trade in Southern Iran, 1745–65*. PhD diss. Indiana University.
- Riederer, G. von (1878), "Die Post in Persien," in: *Oesterreichische Monatsschrift für den Orient* 4: 17–22.
- Rist, Bernd (1981), *Die Stadt Zabol. Zur wirtschaftlichen und sozialen Entwicklung einer Kleinstadt in Ost-Iran*. Marburg/Lahn: Selbstverlag des Geographischen Instituts der Universität Marburg.
- Robinson, Nehemiah (1953), *Persia and Afghanistan and Their Jewish Communities*. New York: Institute of Jewish Affairs.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1939), *Der Niedergang Irans nach dem Tode Ismā'īls des Grausamen 1577–1581*. Würzburg: Konrad Triltsch Verlag.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (transl.) (1956), *Šams al-Husn. Eine Chronik vom Tode Timurs bis zum Jahre 1409 von Tāḡ al-Salmānī. Persischer Text in Faksimile* (HS. Lālā Isma'īl Efendi 304). Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1974), "Das frühsafawidische Isfahan als historische Forschungsaufgabe," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 124: 306–31.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1976), "Das turkmenische Intermezzo. Persische Geschichte zwischen Mongolen und Safawiden," in: *Archäologische Mitteilungen aus Iran*, N.F: 263–297.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1985), "Die turkmenischen Qizilbash. Gründer und Opfer der safawidischen Theokratie," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 135: 227–40.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1986a), "The Jalayirids, Muzaffarids and Sarbadars," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*, edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1–41.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1986b), "Timur in Iran," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*, edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 42–97.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1986c), "The Successors of Timur," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*, edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 98–146.
- Roemer, Hans Robert (1986d), "The Safavid Period," in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*, edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 189–347.
- Röhrborn, Klaus Michael (1966), *Provinzen und Zentralgewalt Persiens im 16. und 17. Jahrhundert*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Röhrborn, Klaus Michael (1979), "Regierung und Verwaltung Irans unter den Safawiden," in: *Handbuch der Orientalistik: Regierung und Verwaltung des vorderen Orients in islamischer Zeit*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Romodina, V. A. (1983), *Očerki po istorii i istorii kul'turi Afganistana*. Moscow: Nauk.
- Romodina, V. A. (1985), *A History of Afghanistan*. Moscow: Progress Publishers.
- Romodina, V. A. (1990), *Afganistan vo vtoroi polovine XIX–nachale XX v.* Moscow: Nauk.

- Ronaldshay, Earl of (1902), "A Journey from Quetta to Mashad by the new Nushki-Sistan Trade Route," in: *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 18: 186–208.
- Roschanzami, Mehdi (1970), *Die Zand-Dynastie*. Hamburg: Hartmut Lüdke Verlag.
- Roseberry, J. Royal (1987), *Imperial Rule in Punjab: The Conquest and Administration of Multan, 1818–1881*. New Delhi: Manohar.
- Ross, David (1970 [1883]), *The Land of the Five Rivers and Sindh*. Delhi: Punjab National Press.
- Rossabi, Morris (1983), "A Translation of Ch'en Ch'eng's *Hsi-Yü Fan-Kuo Chih*," in: *Ming Studies* 17: 49–59.
- Rossabi, Morris (1990), "The 'Decline' of the Central Asian Caravan Trade," in: *The Rise of Merchant Empires*, edited by James D. Tracy. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 351–70.
- Rota, Giorgio (ed., transl.) (2009), *La vita e i tempi di Rostam Khan*. Vienna: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften.
- Rötzer, Klaus (1985), "Die islamische Architektur," in: *Afghanistan*, edited by M. R. Nicod. Innsbruck: Pinguin Verlag.
- Rouvier, J. (1856), "Herát, ville de l'Afghanistan," in: *Revue de l'Orient* n.s. 3: 80–82.
- Roux, J.-P. (1973), "Une survivance des traditions turco-mongoles chez les Séfévides," in: *Revue de l'histoire des religions* 183,1: 11–18.
- Ruggie, John Gerard (1993), "Territoriality and Beyond: Problematizing Modernity in International Relations," in: *International Organization* 47,1: 139–74.
- Russell, R. V. (1969 [1916]), *Tribes and Castes of the Central Provinces of India*, repr., 4 vols. Oosterhout, N.B.: Anthropological Publications.
- Russian Missions into the Interior of Asia*. London: Sir Richard Phillips and Co, 1823.
- Rzehak, Lutz/Pristschepowa, Walerija A. (1994), *Nomadenalltag vor den Toren von Merw*. Dresden: Staatliches Museum für Völkerkunde.
- Sa'idi, 'Abbās (1354/1975), *Sarakhs dīrūz va imrūz: pazhūhishī dar jughrāfiyā-yi tārikhī va ansābi-yi Sarakhs*. Mashhad.
- Saljūqī, Fikrī (1962), *Gāzurgāh*. Kabul: Daulatī Maṭba'a.
- Saljūqī, Fikrī (1343/1964b), *Khiyābān: ba-munāsibat-i ihtifāl-i panjshad va panjahumīn sāl-i vilādat-i Maulānā Nūr al-Dīn 'Abd al-Rahmān Jāmī Haravī*. Kabul: Anjuman-i Jāmī.
- Saljūqī, Fikrī (ed.) (1967), *Risāla-yi mazārāt-i Harāt*. Ḥiṣṣa-yi avval: Amīr Sayyid 'Abdullāh al-Ḥusainī Aṣl al-Dīn Vā'iz-i Haravī, *Maqṣad al-iqbāl sulṭāniya va marṣad al-āmāl khāqāniya*, 864/1459–60, pp. 1–105; Ḥiṣṣa-yi duvvum ta'līf-i Maulānā 'Ubaidullāh b. Abū Sa'īd Haravī, 1198/1783–84, pp. 106–47; Ḥiṣṣa-yi sivvum ta'līf-i Ākhundzāda Mullā Muḥammad Ṣadiq-i Haravī, 1350/1931–32, pp. 148–92; Part IV: Appendix by Fikrī Saljūqī, pp. 1–196. Kabul: Publ. Inst.
- Samizay, Rafi (1981), *Islamic Architecture in Herat: A Study towards Conservation*. Kabul: Ministry of Information and Culture.
- Sanson, Nicolas (1694), *Estat présent du royaume de Perse*. Paris: Langlois.
- Sarkar, Sir Jadunath (1973 [1912]), *History of Aurangzib*. Bombay: Orient Longman.
- Sarkar, Sir Jadunath (1988 [1932]), *Fall of the Mughal Empire*, Vol. I, 1739–1754, repr. New Delhi: Orient Longman.
- Sarkar, Sir Jadunath (1991 [1934]), *Fall of the Mughal Empire*, Vol. II, 1754–1771, repr. New Delhi: Orient Longman.
- Sarkhokh, S. (1975), "Die Grundstruktur der sozio-ökonomischen Organisation der iranischen Gesellschaft in der ersten Hälfte des 19. Jahrhunderts," PhD diss., Münster.
- Sārī, Urāz Muḥammad (1373/1995), *Tārikh-i Turkmanistān*. Tehran: Daftar-i Muṭālī'āt-i Siyāsī va Bain al-milālī.
- Sarwar, Ghulam (1975 [1939]), *History of Shah Ismail Safawi*. New York: AMS Press.
- Sāsānī, Khān Malik (n.d.), *Siyāsatgarān-i daura-yi qājār*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Hidāyat.
- Savary des Bruslons, Jacques (1723), *Dictionnaire universel de commerce*, 2 vols. Paris: Jacques Estienne.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1960), "The Principal Offices of the Safawid State during the Reign of Ismail (907–30/1501–24)," in: *Bulletin of the School Oriental and African Studies* 23: 65–85.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1961), "The Principal Offices of the Safawid State during the Reign of Ṭahmāsp I 930–84/1524–76," in: *Bulletin of the School Oriental and African Studies* 24: 65–85.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1964), "Some Notes on the Provincial Administration of the Early Safawid Empire," in: *Bulletin of the School Oriental and African Studies* 27: 114–28.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1965a), "The Struggle for Supremacy in Persia after the Death of Timur," in: *Der Islam* 40: 35–65.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1965b), "The Consolidation of Safawid power in Persia," in: *Der Islam* 41: 71–94.
- Savory, Roger M (1969), "A 15th-Century Safavid Propagandist at Herat," in: *Semi-centennial Volume, American Oriental Society, Middle West Branch*, edited by Denis Sinor. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Savory, Roger M. (transl.) (1978), *History of Shah 'Abbas the Great*, 2 vols. Boulder: Westview Press. Vol. 3: Index compiled by Renée Bernhard. New York: Bibliotheca Persica, 1986.
- Savory, Roger M. (1980a), *Iran under the Safavids*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1980b), "The History of the Persian Gulf A.D. 600–1800," in: *The Persian Gulf States*, edited by A. J. Cottrell. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Savory, Roger Mervyn (1986), "The Safavid Administrative System" in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods*; edited by Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 351–372.
- Savory, Roger (2002), "The Qajars: 'Last of the Qezelbaş'," in: *Society and Culture in Qajar Iran. Studies in Honor of Hafez Farmayan*, edited by Elton L. Daniel. Costa Mesa: Mazda Publishers: 3–32.
- Sawelieff, P. (1842), "Chiwa vor hundert Jahren," in: *Ausland, Wochenschrift für Erd- und Völkerkunde* 15: 285–6.

- Sayyidī, Miḥdī (1378/1999), *Tārīkh-i shahr-i Mashhad az āghāz to mashrūṭa*. Tehran: Jāmī.
- Schefer, Charles (1975 [1876]), *Relation de l'ambassade au Kharezm de Riza Quoly Khan, 1800–1871*. Amsterdam: Philo Press.
- Schetter, Conrad (2005), "Ethnoscapes, National Territorialization, and the Afghan War," in: *Geopolitics* 10: 50–75.
- Schimkoreit, Renate (1982), *Regesten publizierter safawidischer Herrscherurkunden*. Berlin: Klaus Schwarz.
- Schinasi, May (2008), *Kaboul 1773–1948*. Naples: Università degli Studi di Napoli 'L'Orientale'.
- Schlagintweit, Emil (1877), "Seistan – Persiens Grenzprovinz gegen Afghanistan," in: *Globus* 32: 170–3, 186–9, 200–202.
- Schlögl, Rudolf (2004a), "Vergesellschaftung unter Anwesenden. Zur kommunikativen Form des Politischen in der vormodernen Stadt," in: *Interaktion und Herrschaft. Die Politik der frühneuzeitlichen Stadt*, edited by Rudolf Schlögl. Konstanz: UVK Verlagsgesellschaft: 9–60.
- Schlögl, Rudolf (2004b), "Der frühneuzeitliche Hof als Kommunikationsraum. Interaktionstheoretische Perspektiven der Forschung," in: *Geschichte und Systemtheorie. Exemplarische Fallstudien*. Frankfurt a. M.: Campus.
- Schmidt, Erich F. (1940), *Flights over Ancient Cities of Iran*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Schneider, Irene (2003), "Allies or Enemies?–The Military Relations between the Yamūt Turkmens and the Nascent Qājār State in Late 18th and Early 19th Century Iran," in: *Mitteilungen des SFB "Differenz und Integration" 5: Militär und Staatlichkeit*. Halle: Orientwissenschaftliches Zentrum der Martin-Luther-Universität Halle-Wittenberg: 171–99.
- Schulz, W. (1903), *Zustände im heutigen Persien, wie sie das Reisebuch Ibrahim Begs enthüllt*. Leipzig.
- Schurmann, Herbert Franz (1962), *The Mongols of Afghanistan*. The Hague: Mouton & Co.
- Schuster-Walsen, Sibylla (1970), *Das safawidische Persien im Spiegel europäischer Reiseberichte (1502–1722)*. Baden-Baden: Bruno Grimm.
- Schuyler, Eugene (1966 [1877]), *Turkistan: Notes of a Journey in Russian Turkistan, Khokand, Bukhara, and Kuldja*, edited by Geoffrey Wheeler, 2 vols. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Schwarz, Florian (2000), *Unser Weg schließt tausend Wege ein: Derwische und Gesellschaft im islamischen Mittelasien im 16. Jahrhundert*. Berlin: Schwarz.
- Seddon, Charles N. (ed.) (1931), *A Chronicle of the Early Ṣafawīs Being the Aḥsan-ut Tawārīkh of Ḥasan-i Rūmlū*. Baroda: Oriental Institute.
- Seddon, Charles N. (transl.) (1934), *A Chronicle of the Early Safawis Being the Aḥsanu't-tawārīkh of Ḥasan-i Rūmlū*. Baroda: Oriental Institute.
- Semenov, A. A. (1923), "Djemshidi i ikh strana," in: *Journal of the Turkistan Branch of the Russian Geographical Society* 16: 161–74.
- Sen, Surendranath (ed.) (1949), *Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri*. New Delhi: National Archives of India.
- Sezgin, Fuat (ed.) (1994), *Texts and Studies on Central Asia and the Amu Darya*, 3 vols., *Islamic Geography*, Vols. 235, 236, 246. Frankfurt a. M.: Institute for the History of Arabic-Islamic Science.
- Shaban, M. A. (1971), "Khurasan at the Time of the Arab Conquest," in: *Iran and Islam. In Memory of the late Vladimir Minorsky*, edited by C. E. Bosworth. Edinburgh: 479–90.
- Shafi, Muḥammad (1929), "An Afghan Colony at Qasur," in: *Islamic Culture* 3,3: 452–73.
- Shahīdī, Yaḥyā (1350/1971), "Tārīkhcha-yi jang-i Marv," in: *Bar-rasīhā-yi tārīkhī* 6,1: 34–63.
- Shakespeare, R. (1842), "A Personal Narrative of a Journey from Heraut to Ourenbourg on the Caspian in 1840," in: *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* 51: 691–720.
- Shākirī, Ramazān 'Alī (1365/1986), *Atraknāma: Tārīkh-i jāmi'-i Qūchān*. Tehran: Mu'asasa-yi Int. Amīr Kabīr.
- Sharīf, 'Alī Asghar (1973), "Laghv-i tuyūl va tuyūldārī," in: *Bar-rasīhā-yi tārīkhī* 8,1: 79–85.
- Sheikholeslami, A. Reza (1971), "The Sale of Offices in Qajar Iran, 1858–1896," in: *Iranian Studies* 4,2–3: 104–18.
- Sheikholeslami, A. Reza (1997), *The Structure of Central Authority in Qajar Iran 1871–1896*. Atlanta: Scholar's Press.
- Sheil, Mary (1973 [1856]), *Glimpses of Life and Manners in Persia*, repr. New York: Arno Press.
- Shekofteh, Afrasiab, "The Kurds in Khorasan, North-east of Iran," <http://www.pen-kurd.org/englizi/varia/The-Kurds-in-Khorasan.pdf> (2010–05–20).
- Shumov, Sergej A. (2002), *Istoria Afganistana: v sostave velikikh imperii, derzava Akhmed-shakha Durrani, anglo-afganskije vojni, pravlenie Abdurrahman-khana, konflikty XX veka*. Moscow: Kraft.
- Shuster, William Morgan (1912), *The Strangling of Persia. Story of the European Diplomacy and Oriental Intrigue that Resulted in the Denationalization of Twelve Million Mohammedans*. New York: The Century Co.
- Ṣiddiqī, Jalāl al-Dīn (1353/1974), "Paidāyish-i angūr dar Harāt-i bāstān," in: *Vaḥīd* 12: 205–10.
- Siddiqui, Iqtidar Husain (transl., ed.) (1993), *The Uzbek emirates of Bukhara and Khulum in the Early Nineteenth Century as Described in an Indian Travelogue: Tarikh-i manazil-i Bukhara (1812 A.D.) by Hafiz Muhammad Fazil Khan*. Patna: Khudabakhsh Oriental Public Library.
- Simkin, Colin G. F. (1968), *The Traditional Trade of Asia*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Simmer, G. (1996), "Karawanenwege, Kaufleute und Handelskompagnien. Aspekte des Handels in der frühen Neuzeit," in: *Spektrum Iran* 9,1: 6–45, 123–4.
- Singer, André (1972), "The Jamshīdī of Khurasan: An Historical Note," in: *Iran* 10: 151–55.
- Singh, Bhagat (1990), *Maharaja Ranjit Singh and His Times*. New Delhi: Sehgal Publishers.
- Singh, Chetan (1991), *Region and Empire: Panjab in the Seventeenth Century*. Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Singh, Ganda (1981[1959]), *Ahmad Shah Durrani: Father of Modern Afghanistan*, repr. Lahore: Tariq Publications.

- Siroux, Maxime (1949), *Caravansérails d'Iran et petites constructions routières*. Cairo: L'Institut Français d'Archéologie Orientale.
- Sīstānī, Muḥammad A'zam (1990), *Sīstān. Sarzamīn-i māsaḥā va ḥamāsahā*, vols. 3–4. Kabul: Ākādimī-yi 'Ulūm.
- Smith, E. (1876), "The Perso-Afghan Mission in 1871–72," in: *Eastern Persia*, edited by Frederic J. Goldsmid, vol. 1. London: Macmillan and Co: 225–391.
- Smith, John Masson (1978), "Turanian Nomadism and Iranian Politics," in: *Iranian Studies* 11: 57–81.
- Smith, John Masson (1999), "Mongol Nomadism and Middle Eastern Geography: Qishlaqs and Tūmens," in: *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy*, edited by Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan. Leiden: E. J. Brill: 39–56.
- Sohrweide, Hanna (1965), "Der Sieg der Safaviden in Persien und seine Rückwirkungen auf die Schiiten Anatoliens im 16. Jahrhundert," in: *Der Islam* 41: 95–223.
- Soucek, Priscilla P. (1998), "Timurid Women: A Cultural Perspective," in: *Women in the Medieval Islamic World*, edited by Gavin Hambly. New York: St. Martin's Press: 199–226.
- Soudavar, Abolala (1999), "Between the Safavids and the Mughals: Art and Artists in Transition," in: *Iran* 37: 49–66.
- Spooner, Brian (1965), "Arghiyān. The Area of Jājarm in Western Khurāsān," in: *Iran* 3: 97–107.
- Spuler, Bertold (1943), *Die Goldene Horde. Die Mongolen in Rußland 1223–1502*. Leipzig: Harrassowitz.
- Spuler, Bertold (1978), "Der mongolische Nomadismus in einer sesshaften Gesellschaft: die Goldene Horde," in: *Bulletin d'Etudes Orientales* 30: 201–208.
- Spuler, Bertold (1994 [1969]), *The Mongol Period. History of the Muslim World*, translated by F. R. C. Bagley, repr. Princeton: Markus Wiener Publishers.
- Stack, Shannon Caroline (1975), "Herat: a Political and Social Study," PhD diss., U. C. Los Angeles.
- Stadelbauer, Jörg (1973), *Bahnbau und kulturgeographischer Wandel in Turkmenien*. Berlin: Duncker und Humblot.
- Stebnitzky (1977), "Colonel Stebnitzky's Journey in Central and Southern Turkomania," in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society: 62–70.
- Steel, Richard/Crowther, John (1905 [1625]), "A Journall of the Journey of Richard Steel, and John Crowther, from Azmere in India... to Spahan... in the affaires of the East-Indian Societie. Ann. 1615.1616," in: *Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas, His Pilgrimes*, edited by Samuel Purchas Vol. 3. Glasgow: James MacLehose and Sons: 269, 272.
- Steensgaard, Niels (1974), *The Asian Trade Revolution of the Seventeenth Century: The East India Companies and the Decline of the Caravan Trade*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press: 55–73.
- Steensgaard, Niels (1999), "The route through Quandahar: the significance of the overland trade from India to the West in the seventeenth century," in: *Merchants, Companies and Trade: Europe and Asia in the Early Modern Era*, edited by Sushil Chaudhury and Michel Morineau. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Steinmann, Linda Keehn (1986), "Shah 'Abbas and the Royal Silk Trade 1599–1629," PhD diss., New York University.
- Stewart, Charles E. (1881), "The Country of the Tekke Turkomans, and the Tejend and Murghab Rivers," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography* 3: 513–546.
- Stewart, Charles E. (1886a), "The Herat Valley and the Persian Border from the Hari Rud to Sistan," *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography* 8: 137–56.
- Stewart, Charles E. (1886b), "A Visit to Badghis in 1833 and to the Herat Valley in 1855," in: *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 2: 129–144.
- Stewart, Charles E. (1977), "The Country of the Tekke Turkomans and the Tejend and Murghab Rivers," in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming. London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society: 124–172; originally published in the *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* 3 (1881): 513–46.
- Stirling, Edward (1991), *The Journals of Edward Stirling in Persia and Afghanistan, 1828–1829*, edited by Jonathan Lee. Naples: Istituto Universitario Orientale.
- Stolze, F./Andreas, F. C. (1885), "Die Handelsverhältnisse Persiens mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der deutschen Interessen," in: *Petermanns Mitteilungen, Ergänzungsheft* 77.
- Strahl, Philip (transl.) (1824), *Des kaiserlichen russischen Gesandten Nicolaus von Murawiew Reise durch Turkomanien nach Chiwa in den Jahren 1819 und 1820*. Berlin: Reimer.
- Stratil-Sauer, Gustav (1937), *Meschhed. Eine Stadt baut am Vaterland Iran*. Leipzig: Ernst Staneck Verlag.
- Stumm, Hugo (1875), *Der russische Feldzug nach Chiwa*. Berlin: Mittler.
- Subrahmanyam, Sanjay (ed.) (1990), *Merchants, Markets and the State in Early Modern India*. Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Subrahmanyam, Sanjay (1993), *The Portuguese Empire in Asia 1500–1700: A Political and Economic History*. London: Longman.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1983), "Art and Politics in early 16th Century Central Asia," in: *Central Asiatic Journal* 27: 121–148.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1988a), "Centralizing Reform and Its Opponents in the Late Timurid Period," in: *Iranian Studies* 21,1–2: 123–151.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1988b), "Socioeconomic Bases of Cultural Patronage under the Later Timurids," in: *International Journal of Middle Eastern Studies* 20: 479–505.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1991), "A Timurid Educational and Charitable Foundation: the Ikhlāṣiyya Complex of 'Alī Shīr Navā'ī in 15th–Century Herat and Its Endowment," in: *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 111,1: 38–61.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1993), "A Medieval Persian Agricultural Manual in Context: the Irshād al-zirā'a in Late Timurid and Early Safavid Khorasan," in: *Studia Iranica* 22, 2: 167–217.

- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1994a), "The Cult of 'Abdullāh Anṣārī under the Timurids," in: *God is Beautiful and He Loves Beauty*, edited by Alma Giese and J. Christoph Bürgel. Frankfurt a.M.: Peter Lang: 377–406.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (1994b), "The Symbiosis of Turk and Tajik," in: *Central Asia in Historical Perspective*, edited by Beatrice F. Manz. Boulder: Westview Press: 45–61.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (2002), *Le Monde est un jardin. Aspects de l'histoire culturelle de l'Iran médiéval*. Studia Iranica Cahier 28. Paris: Association pour l'avancement des études iraniennes.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva (2007), *Timurids in Transition. Turko-Persian Politics and Acculturation in Medieval Iran*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Sultan Mahomed Khan (1980 [1900]), *The Life of Abdur Rahman: Amir of Afghanistan*, 2 vols. Karachi: Oxford University Press.
- Stümer, Faruk (1972), *Oğuzlar*. Ankara: Ankara Üniversitesi.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1897), "Recent Journeys in Persia," in: *The Geographical Journal* 10,6: 568–94.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1902a), *Ten Thousand Miles in Persia or Eight Years in Iran*. London: Murray.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1902a), "A Fourth Journey in Persia," in: *The Geographical Journal* 19,2: 121–69.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1906), "A Fifth Journey in Persia," in: *The Geographical Journal* 28,6: 560–87.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1910), "Historical Notes on Khurasan." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*: 1114–48, 1152–4.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1911), "A Sixth Journey in Persia," in: *The Geographical Journal* 37,2: 149–62.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1922), *Persia*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1930), *A History of Persia*, 2 vols. London: MacMillan.
- Sykes, Percy M. (1981[1940]), *A History of Afghanistan*, 2 vols., repr. New Delhi: Mehra Offset Press.
- Sykes, P/ Khan Bahadur Ahmad Khan (1910), *The Glory of the Shia World. The Tale of a Pilgrimage. Translated and Edited from a Persian Manuscript*, (author: Nūrullāh b. Muḥammad Ḥusain Iṣfahānī) London: MacMillan & Co.
- Szuppe, Maria, "Herat, iii. History, Medieval Period; iv Topography and Urbanism", *E. Ir.* 12: 211–17.
- Szuppe, Maria (1992), *Entre Timourides, Uzbeks et Safavides. Questions d'histoire politique et sociale de Hérat dans la première moitié du XVI siècle*. Paris: Studia Iranica, Cahier 12.
- Szuppe, Maria (1993), "Les résidences princières de Hérat. Problèmes de continuité fonctionnelle entre les époques timouride et safavide (1ère moitié du XVIe siècle)," in: *Etudes safavides*, edited by Jean Calmard. Paris/Tehran: Institut Français de Recherche en Iran: 267–86.
- Szuppe, Maria (1996a), "Kinship Ties between the Safavids and the Qizilbash Amirs in Late Sixteenth-Century Iran: A Case Study of the Political Career of Members of the Sharaf al-Din Oglu Tekelu Family," in: *Safawid Persia, Pembroke Papers* 4, edited by Charles Melville. London: I.B. Tauris: 79–104.
- Szuppe, Maria (1996b), "En quête de chevaux turkmènes: le journal de voyage de Mir 'Izzetullah de Delhi à Boukhara en 1812–1813," in: *Cahiers d'Asie centrale* 1,2: 91–124.
- Szuppe, Maria (1999), "The 'Jewels of Wonder': Learned Ladies and Princess Politicians in the Provinces of Early Safavid Iran," in: *Women in the Medieval Islamic World*, edited by Gavin Hambly. New York: St. Martin's Press.
- Ṭabībī, 'Abd al-Ḥakīm (1368/1990), *Tārīkh-i mukhtaṣar-i Harāt dar 'aṣr-i Tīmūriyān*. Tehran: Hirmānd.
- Tapper, Nancy (1973), "The Advent of Pushtun Maldars in North-West Afghanistan," in: *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 36,1: 55–79.
- Tardy, Lajos (1982), "Georgische Teilnahme an den persisch-afghanischen Kriegen 1711–1725 im Spiegel eines Missionsberichtes," in: *Bedi Kartlisa Revue de Kartvélogie* 40: 316–27.
- Tarzi, Amin H. (1993), "A Tax Reform of the Afghan Amir, 'Abd al-Rahman Khan," in *Journal of Asian History* 27,1: 30–50.
- Tarzi, Amin H. (2003), "The Judicial State: Evolution and Centralization of the Courts of Afghanistan, 1883–1896," PhD diss., New York University.
- Tate, George P. (1909), *The Frontiers of Baluchistan. Travels on the Borders of Persia and Afghanistan*. London: Witherby & Co.
- Tate, George P. (1970 [1910]), *Seistan. A Memoir on the History, Topography, Ruins and People of the Country*, repr. Quetta.
- Tate, George P. (1973 [1911]), *The Kingdom of Afghanistan*, repr. Karachi: Indus Publications.
- Tauer, Felix (ed.), *Histoire des conquêtes de Tamerlan intitulée Zafarnāma par Niẓāmuddīn Šāmī*. Prague: Oriental Institute, Vol. 1 (1936), *Texte persan du Zafarnāma*; Vol. 2 (1956), *Introduction, commentaire, index*.
- Tauer, Felix (1934), "Continuation du Zafarnāma de Niẓāmuddīn Šāmī par Ḥāfiz-i Abrū," in: *Archiv Orientalni* 6,1: 429–65.
- Tauer, Felix (1959), *Cinq opuscules de Ḥafiz-i Abrū concernant l'histoire de l'Iran au temps de Tamerlan*. Prague: Editions de l'Académie Tchecoslovaque des Sciences.
- Tauer, Felix (1963), "Ḥāfizī Abrū sur l'historiographie," in: *Mélanges d'orientalisme offerts à Henri Massé*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Dānishgāh-i Tīhrān.
- Tavahhūdi, Kalīmullāh (1364/1985), *Ḥarakat-i tārikhī-yi kurd ba Khurāsān dar difā' az istiqlāl-i Īrān*, Vol. 2. Mashhad.
- Tavakkulī, Aḥmad (1948), *Ravābiṭ-i siyāsī-yi Īrān*. Tehran: Chāpkhāna-yi Mihr.
- Tavernier, Jean Baptiste (1679), *Les six voyages de Jean Baptiste Tavernier, Ecuyer Baron d'Aubonne, En Turquie, En Perse, Et Aux Indes*, 2 vols. Paris.
- Teufel, F. (1884), "Quellenstudien zur neueren Geschichte der Chanate," in: *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 38: 235–381.
- Teufenstein, C. von (1883), "Persische Verwaltungszustände," *Oesterreichische Monatsschrift für den Orient* 9: 103–7.

- Thackston, Wheeler M. (1994), *Khwandamir Habibu's-Siyar*, Tome Three, *The Reign of the Mongol and the Turk. Pt. 1, Genghis Khan – Amir Temür; Pt. 2 Shahrukh Mirza – Shah Ismail*. Cambridge, Mass.: Dept. of Near Eastern Languages and Civilizations, Harvard University.
- Thackston, Wheeler M. (1996), *The Baburnama. Memoirs of Babur, Prince and Emperor*, translated, edited, and annotated by Wheeler M. Thackston. New York: Oxford University Press.
- “The Basin of the Helmund,” *The Geographical Magazine* (April 1874) 1,1: 1–4.
- “The New Russian-Persian Frontier East of the Caspian Sea,” in: *The Country of the Turkomans*, edited by Sir Duncan Cumming. London: Oguz Press and the Royal Geographic Society, 1977: 181–6.
- Thesiger, W. (1955), “The Hazaras of Central Afghanistan,” in: *The Geographical Journal* 121: 312–19.
- De Thévenot, Jean (1674), *Relation d'un voyage fait au Levant; dans laquelle ... il est traité de la Perse*, Vol. II, *Suite du voyage de Levant*. Paris.
- Thomas, David (2007), “Fīrūzkūh: The Summer Capital of the Ghurids,” in: *Cities in the Pre-Modern World*, edited by Amira K. Bennison and Alison L. Gascoigne. London: Routledge: 115–44.
- Thornton, H. P. (1954–5), “British Policy in Persia 1858–1890,” in: *The English Historical Review* 69 (1954): 554–79; 70 (1955): 55–71.
- Todd, D'Arcy (1844), “Report of a Journey from Herat to Simla, via Candahar, Cabool and the Punjab, Undertaken in the Year 1838,” in: *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* 13.
- Traub, Paul (1872), *Der Wolf von Khorassan. Ein heroisches Lebens- und Culturbild aus Persien*. Berlin: Dr. Langmann.
- Trausch, Tilmann (forthcoming), “Ghazā in 16th-Century Chronicles of Safavid Iran,” in: *Ghazā and Ghazw in Muslim Literature and Historiography*, edited by Francesca Bellino und Michele Bernardini. Cambridge: Cambridge Scholars Publishing.
- Tucker, Ernest S. (1992), “Religion and Politics in the Era of Nadir Shah: The Views of Six Contemporary Sources,” PhD diss., University of Chicago.
- Tucker, Ernest S. (1993), “Explaining Nadir Shah: Kingship and Royal Legitimacy in Muhammad Kazim Marvi's Tarikh-i 'alam-ara-yi Nadiri,” in: *Iranian Studies* 26, 1–2: 95–117.
- Tucker, Ernest S. (1998), “1739: History, Self, and Other in Afsharid Iran and Mughal India,” in: *Iranian Studies* 31,2: 207–17.
- Tucker, Ernest S. (2006), *Nadir Shah's Quest for Legitimacy in Post-Safavid Iran*. Gainesville: University Press of Florida.
- Tumanovich, Nataliya N. (1983), *Tazkire (Pamyatnie zapiski). Faksimile rukopisi, izsdanie teksta, perevod c persidskovo, vvedenie i primechaniya*. Moscow: Izdatelstvo Nauka.
- Tumanovich, Nataliya N. (1989), *Gerat b XVI–XVIII vekax*. Moscow: Nauka.
- Vahīdī, Muḥammad Ya' qūb (1963), “Jughrāfiyā-i tārikhī-i Jūzjānān,” in: *Āryānā*, 22, 2–11.
- Vámbéry, Ármin (1864), *Travels in Central Asia. A Journey from Tehran across the Turkoman Desert on the Eastern Shore of the Caspian to Khiva, Bokhara, and Samarcand Performed in the Year 1863*. London: John Murray.
- Vámbéry, Ármin (1865), “The Geographical Nomenclature of the Disputed Country between Merv and Herat,” in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, Series 2,7: 591–6.
- Vámbéry, Ármin (transl.) (1899), *The Travels and Adventures of the Turkish Admiral Sīdī Ali Reis in India, Afghanistan, Central Asia, and Persia, during the Years 1553–1556*. London: Luzac.
- Vámbéry, Ármin (1990 [1873]), *History of Bokhara*, repr. Karachi.
- Varahrām, Ghulām Rizā (1366/1987), *Tārīkh-i siyāsī va ijtimā'ī-ī Īrān dar 'aṣr-i zand*. Tehran: Intishārāt-i Mu'īn.
- Vaughan, H. B. (1896), “Journeys in Persia,” in: *The Geographical Journal* 17,1: 24–41.
- “Vaz'-i jughrāfi va taqsimāt-i siyāsī va idārī-i kunūnī-yi vilāyat-i Harāt,” in: *Mihr* 2,7 (1934): 791–800.
- Verma, R. C. (1950), “The Relation of the Mughals with the Tribes of the North-West,” in: *Islamic Culture* 24,4: 249–60.
- Verma, R. C. (1952), “The Tribal Policy of the Mughals,” in: *Islamic Culture* 26,3: 13–34.
- Vogelsang, Willem J. (2002a), *The Afghans*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Vogelsang, Willem J. (2002b), “The Ethnogenesis of the Pashtuns,” in: *Cairo to Kabul. Afghan and Islamic Studies*, edited by Warwick Ball and Leonard Harrow. London: Melisende: 228–235.
- Volodarsky, M. (1985), “Persia's Foreign Policy between the Two Herat Crises, 1831–1856,” in: *Middle East Studies* 21: 111–151.
- Wahl, Günther (1795), *Altes und Neues Vorder- und Mittelasien oder pragmatisch-geografische, fysische und statistische Schilderung und Geschichte des Persischen Reichs von den ältesten Zeiten bis auf diesen Tag*. Leipzig.
- Wannell, Bruce (2002), “Echoes in a Landscape – Western Afghanistan in 1989,” in: *Cairo to Kabul. Afghan and Islamic Studies Presented to Ralph Pinder-Wilson*, edited by Warwick Ball and Leonard Harrow. London: Melisende: 236–247.
- Waring, Edward Scott (1807), *A Tour to Sheeraz by the Route of Kazroon and Feerozabad*. London: T. Cadell and W. Davies.
- Watson, Robert Grant (1866), *A History of Persia from the Beginning of the Nineteenth Century to the Year 1858*. London: Smith, Elder & Co.
- Watson, William (1983), “Iran and China,” in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 3(1), *The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanian Periods*, edited by Ehsan Yarshater. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 537–58.
- Weiers, Michael (1972), *Die Sprache der Moghol der Provinz Herat in Afghanistan*. Opladen: Westdeutscher Verlag.
- Weiers, Michael (1989), “Geschichte der Mongolen,” in: *Die Mongolen und ihr Weltreich*, edited by Arne Eggebrecht. Mainz: Philip von Zabern: 45–114.
- Wheeler, J. Talboys (1975 [1864]), *Early Travels in India. Mr. Samuel Purchas's Description of India 250 Years ago*. Delhi: Deep Publications.

- Whitridge, Gordon (1986), *Charles Masson of Afghanistan*. Warminster: Aris & Phillips Ltd.
- Wieshöfer, Josef (2005 [1993]), *Das antike Persien. Von 550 v. Chr. bis 650 n. Chr.* Düsseldorf: Patmos.
- Wilber, Donald (1979), "The Timurid Court: Life in Gardens and Tents," in: *Journal of Persian Studies* 17: 127–33.
- Williams, Maynard Owen (1933), "Afghanistan Makes Haste Slowly," in: *National Geographic Magazine* 64: 731–69.
- Williams, Tim (2007), "The City of Sultan Kala, Merv, Turkmenistan: Communities, Neighbourhoods and Urban Planning from the Eighth to the Thirteenth Century," in: *Cities in the Pre-Modern World*, edited by Amira K. Bennison and Alison L. Gascoigne. London: Routledge: 42–62.
- Wolfe, Nancy (1966), *Herat, a Pictorial Guide*. Kabul: Afghan Tourist Organization.
- Wolff, Joseph (1848), *Narrative of a Mission to Bokhara in the Years 1843–1845 to Ascertain the Fate of Colonel Stoddart and Captain Conolly*. Edinburgh: William Blackwood & Sons.
- Wood, William A. (1990), "Turkmen Ethnohistory," in: *Vanishing Jewels: Central Asian Tribal Weavings*, edited by Goerge O'Bannon, Rochester, N. Y.
- Wood, William A. (1998), "The Sarii Turkmens of Merv and the Khanate of Khiva in the Early Nineteenth Century," PhD diss., Indiana University.
- Woods, John E. (1990), *The Timurid Dynasty*. Bloomington. Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies.
- Woods, John E. (1999), *The Aqquyunlu. Clan, Confederation, Empire*, Salt Lake City: University of Utah Press.
- Wright, Denis (2001 [1977]), *The English amongst the Persians. Imperial Lives in Nineteenth-Century Iran*, repr. London: I.B. Tauris.
- Wyllie, John W. S. (1875), *Essays on the External Policy of India*, edited by W. W. Hunter. London: Smith, Elder & Co.
- Yapp, Malcolm E. (1964), "The Revolutions of 1841–2 in Afghanistan," in: *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 27: 333–381.
- Yapp, Malcolm E. (1980), *Strategies of British India: Britain, Iran and Afghanistan 1798–1850*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Yapp, Malcolm (2000), "The Legend of the Great Game," in: *Proceedings of the British Academy* 111: 179–98.
- Yate, Arthur C. (1887), *England and Russia Face to Face in Asia: Travels with the Afghan Boundary Commission*. Edinburgh: W. Blackwood.
- Yate, Charles E. (1887b), "Notes on the City of Hirāt," in: *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* 56,1: 84–106.
- Yate, Charles E. (1900), *Khurasan and Sistan*. Edinburgh, London: Blackwood.
- Yate, Charles E. (2003 [1888]), *Northern Afghanistan, or Letters from the Afghan Boundary Commission*. Repr. London: Cambridge Scholars Press.
- Yazdi, Maḥmūd Fāzil (1989), "Vaqfnāma-yi Zain al-Dīn Abū Bakr Khvāfi," in: *Mishkāt* 22: 187–200.
- Za'farānlū, Qudratullāh Raushanī (ed.) (1347/1968), *Sih safarnāma: Harāt, Marv, Mashhad*. Tīhrān: Dānishgāh-i Tīhrān.
- Zakrzewski, Daniel (2011), "Terms of Politics and Pastoral Nomadism in Two Works of Fifteenth-Century Persian Historical Writing," in: *Eurasian Studies* 9,1–2: 159–85.
- Zaryab, Abbas (transl.) (1960), "Der Bericht über die Nachfolger Timurs aus dem Tarīh-i kabīr des Ġa'farī ibn Muḥammad al-Ḥusainī," PhD diss., Johannes Gutenberg-Universität zu Mainz.
- Zhukovskii (1894), *Razvaliny starogo Merva – Drevnosti Zakapiiskogo kraia*. Saint Petersburg.
- Zimmermann, Carl (1842), *Der Kriegs-Schauplatz in Inner-Asien*. Berlin: Schröder.

MAPS

- Alai, Cyrus (2005), *General Maps of Persia, 1477–1925*. Leiden: Brill.
- Bregel, Yuri E. (2003), *An Historical Atlas of Central Asia*. Leiden: Brill.
- Habib, Irfan (1982), *An Atlas of the Mughal Empire*. Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Holdich, Thomas Hungerford (1885), "Afghan Boundary Commission. Geographical Notes. III," in: *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography*, New Monthly Series, 7,5: 273–92.
- Kinneir, John MacDonald (1813), *Map of the Country Lying between the Euphrates and Indus on the East and West, and the Oxus and Terek and Indian Ocean on the North and South*. London.
- Levasseur, Victor (ca 1835), *Perse, Kaboul, Hérat, Bélouchistan*. ca 1:250 000 000. Paris.
- Plan of Herat* (1940), India Office Library, L/PS/20/B223/13.
- Prescott, J. R. V./Collier H. J./Prescott, D. F. (1977), *Frontiers of Asia and Southeast Asia*. Melbourne: Melbourne University Press.
- Routes in N.W. Afghanistan*, India Office Library, L/PS/20/B223/13.
- Sahab, 'Abbas (1976), *Atlas of Ancient and Historical Maps of Iran*. Tehran: Sahab Geographic and Drafting Institute.
- Sédillot, L. (1852), "Eine persische Karte von Meschhed über Bochara nach Balkh," in: *Das Ausland* 25: 1117.
- Stewart, Charles E. (1881), "The Country of the Tekke Turkomans, and the Tejend and Murghab Rivers," *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography* 3: 513–546.